Hardy User Guide
Version 1.7

Julian Smart and Robert Rae

21st February 1996

Contents

1. Introduction

Hardy is a tool that has been designed and developed by the Artificial Intelligence Applications Institute at The University of Edinburgh, primarily for diagramming applications. It runs on Unix workstations under Motif or Open Look, and on PCs under Windows 3.1.

In this manual, the Windows version of Hardy is referred to as *Hardy for Windows*.

1.1. Diagramming

The idea behind Hardy is very simple. The *diagram* is a fundamental tool that is essential to many analysis and design activities. Diagrams provide an intuitive way of expressing relationships between concepts which most people can relate to, unlike most formal languages and notations. However, though diagrams are often easily drawn with pencil and paper, any subsequent modification normally means that the whole diagram has to be re-drawn, with all the usual problems of consistency checking, etc. Some support for diagramming can be provided by conventional computer-based drawing tools, but these suffer from two main draw-backs.

Firstly, tools are not normally specific to the type of diagram required; for example, when an image is erased or moved, there is no knowledge of what other images are related to it, so any links to and from the image remain where they were. Secondly, in most cases the diagram cannot be directly processed---the diagram must first be translated by hand to a different representation. In those tools that overcome these shortcomings, the types of diagram and means of customisation provided are limited; in addition, high costs are normally associated with them.

Hardy allows the user to build a *diagram type* (such as a dataflow diagram type) or to use a type already provided by someone else. The user may then select a type and rapidly produce diagrams, which consist essentially of a number of *nodes* linked by *arcs*. When constructing a diagram, arcs will follow nodes when they are moved, and values may be entered for node and arc *attributes* that are specified in the diagram type.

Once created, diagrams can be output in a variety of formats which allow the underlying system model to be processed by another program, so that Hardy can be used, for instance, as a knowledge capture tool feeding directly into a Knowledge Based System, or transformed into a document with mixed text and graphics, so that (for example) the documentation of organisational procedures becomes much less arduous. Hardy can also be used to display diagrams generated by other programs.

To achieve a greater degree of customisation, Hardy supports an *Application Programmer's Interface*. This allows the card type designer to intercept events such as selecting a menu item or clicking on a diagram node and implement specialised layout algorithms or animate particular scenarios.

1.2. Hardy and hypertext

The diagramming capabilities of Hardy are built on top of a *hypertext* framework in which each diagram has its own *card* (window), and cards may be linked together to form a tree or network. The user may browse through this network, either by following hypertext links or by viewing the *index tree* and clicking on a card title.

Diagrams have a habit of being hierarchical, with a node on a high-level diagram representing an entire diagram at a lower level. Hardy supports this type of organisation though *expansion cards*. A diagram card with its expansion cards will all be treated as a single unit, being held in one file, for instance.

1.3. Manual conventions

In this document, the following conventions will be used.

A term will be italicised when first used, as in *hypertext card*, above.

The names of particular files will be shown using a "teletype" face, as in `diagrams.def`. The same face will also be used for particular function names, as in `diagram-card-find-root`.

Button labels will be shown in bold face, for instance **OK**, and the notation **Menu: Entry** will refer to the entry **Entry** on the menu **Menu**.

2. Running Hardy

To run Hardy, you require a serial number, which may be obtained from AIAI if you are an academic user, or have otherwise arranged with AIAI to use Hardy.

This serial number should be entered into Hardy using the **Tools: Preference** menu. Click on the **Serial number** button, enter the number, and restart Hardy.

2.1. Starting a session

It is normally useful to tell Hardy the type of cards and symbols you expect to use during a session so that they are immediately available. This is done through a file which contains information on all the definitions needed. Its default name is `diagrams.def` so, before running Hardy, this file should be in your working directory or you should tell the system which alternative file you require.

This can be done either by specifying it on the command line through the **-def** flag followed by the full name of the file required (see *Command line options* (page 43)), or by specifying it as a *resource* in `WIN.INI` under Windows or in `.hardyrc` under X (see *Hardy resources* (page 44)).

If Hardy cannot find the diagram definition file, however it is specified, it will give you a warning. Under Open Look, other messages may also appear warning that it cannot load certain fonts. This is normal: Hardy is just searching for a font which is not available.

2.2. Ending a session

To exit from Hardy, use the **File: Exit Hardy** menu from the control window.

2.3. Command line options

Many system defaults can be over-ridden by giving options on the command line. For instance, to specify an initial hypertext index file, use the **-f** option followed by the file name, or to specify the directories in which to search for files, use the **-path** option followed by the full directory name.

These are Hardy's command line options for both UNIX and Windows, unless stated otherwise:

-block *filename*
Specify a block type definition file(see *hypertext cards* (page 66)).

-clips *filename*
Specify a CLIPS filename to batch.

-def *filename*
Use the specified global diagram definition file, instead of the default `diagrams.def` in the current directory. This file mentions all the diagram definition files which should be loaded on running.

-dir *directory*
Change to the given directory before loading CLIPS and other files. Useful to avoid specifying directories in CLIPS application code.

-h Print a screen summarising the command line options (*UNIX only*).

-help Print the list of recognised command line options (*UNIX only*).

-load *filename*
Specify a CLIPS filename to load (file must contain constructs only).

-mdi Run in MDI (Multiple Document Interface) mode (*Windows only*).
In this mode, child windows are constrained by the main window. This is the default under Windows. *NOTE:* this option has been withdrawn from version 1.76.

-nobanner Suppress the opening screen, regardless of initialisation file setting.

-path *path*
Add the given path to Hardy's path search list. This enables Hardy to find files which are not in the current directory or whose absolute path name is incorrect, perhaps due to transfer of files between UNIX and PC. This switch may be used repeatedly to add more than one path.

-P*printer*
Substitute *printer* with a printer name to use as the default printer.

-port *integer*
Specify a port number if Hardy is used as a DDE server.

-sdi Run in SDI (Single Document Interface) mode (*Windows only*).
In this mode, windows are not constrained by the main window. *NOTE:* this option has been withdrawn from version 1.76.

-server Use as a DDE server.

-version Display the current version number.

2.4. Hardy resources

Under Windows, Hardy resources should be held in the Hardy section of the file `WIN.INI`.in the form *name* = *value*.

Under X, they should be in the file `.hardyrc` in your home directory in the form hardy.*name* = *value*

An example of a `WIN.INI` entry is as follows:

```
[hardy]
definitionList=c:\diagrams\diagrams.def
```

For `.hardyrc`, the equivalent is the line:

```
hardy.definitionList=/user/11/jacs/diagrams/diagrams.def
```

Below are some of Hardy's resource names for use in both UNIX and Windows versions, unless otherwise stated.

definitionList = *filename* (`diagrams.def`)
List of diagram definition files.

objectBitmapSize = *integer* (32)
Size in pixels of node/arc images on diagram symbol palette.

annotationBitmapSize = *integer* (32)
Size in pixels of annotation images on diagram symbol palette.

libraryBitmapSize = *integer* (32)
Size in pixels of images on symbol library palette.

showLinkPanelOnCreate = *boolean* (0)
If *1*, show the hyperlink panel when a diagram card is created.

showToolBarOnCreate = *boolean* (1)
If *1*, show the toolbar when a diagram card is created.

showPaletteOnCreate = *boolean* (1)
If *1*, show the symbol palette when a diagram card is created.

showErrors = *boolean* (1)
If *1*, route error messages to the Development Window.

displayCategories = *boolean* (0)
If *1*, card types will be requested by the system as category then type.

clickToSelect = *boolean* (0)
If *0*, clicking on an object will follow any hyperlink present, shift-clicking will select it. If *1*, clicking will select, shift-clicking will follow the hyperlink.

mdi = *boolean* (1) *Windows only*
If *1*, run Hardy in MDI (Multiple Document Interface) mode. In this mode, child windows are constrained by the main window. This is the default under Windows.

HARDYStart = *boolean* (1) *Windows only*
If *1*, the audio file `hystart.wav` will be played when the system is started.

HARDYExit = *boolean* (1) *Windows only*
If *1*, the audio file `hyexit.wav` will be played when the system is exited.

Standard defaults are shown in brackets.

2.5. Files used by Hardy

Apart from the executable file, `hardy`, the system will look for certain files in your working directory when it is started. The most important of these are:

1. `diagrams.def`-- a list of diagram type files,
2. resources file -- contains your preferred settings for various system values (`.hardyrc` under X or `WIN.INI` under Windows). See *Hardy resources* (page 44).

Other information must also be available between Hardy sessions. Hardy uses files for this purpose, distinguishing several different types of file, each holding different but related types of information. Standard filename extensions are used to identify these files.

1. Definition list file (`diagrams.def`),
2. Symbol library files (`.slb`),
3. Card collection index files (`.ind`),
4. Diagram and hypertext definition files (`.def`),
5. Diagram card files (`.dia`),
6. Hypertext card files (`.hyp`),
7. Text card files (`.txt`).
8. Hardy package files (`.hpk`). These are explained in *Packaging Hardy files* (page 46).

2.6. Hardy application associations

Just as you can associate file extensions with programs in MS Windows, you can associate particular application-defined file extensions with Hardy command lines. The appropriate command line will be invoked when Hardy encounters a file which isn't an index file, and for which there is an entry in Hardy's association list.

This means that instead of invoking a specific Hardy application or document with a command line like this:

```
hardy -dir c:\hardy\tree -clips treeload.clp -f demo.tre
```

you could instead use:

```
hardy demo.tre
```

or, if no application main file needs to be specified,

```
hardy tre
```

which will put Hardy into the required application state.

What is the nature of demo.tre? Well, it could be a normal index file, or it could be an application-specific file, unrecognised by Hardy. In the latter case, the application code should register an OnLoadFile event handler which will be called when Hardy finds the application association and after it has executed the associated command line. If there is no OnLoadFile event handler, Hardy will assume the file is a normal index file.

You can edit the associations by selecting the Preferences dialog and clicking on the *Associations* button. The Hardy Application associations dialog will appear, with a list of applications (initially empty). To add an application association, click on **Add**, and fill in the **Extension**, **Name** and **Command** fields. Click on a listbox item or Ok to register the extension.

The values of the dialog fields should be filled in as follows:

- Extension: this is a short file extension unique to the application, such as 'tre' or 'btk'.
- Name: the name of the application, e.g. Tree Drawing Demo.
- Command: the Hardy command line that will be executed by Hardy to activate the application. It should not include an index-loading command (-f) since this index loading will be done automatically by Hardy if necessary. An example:

  ```
  -dir {HARDYDIR}\tree -clips treeload.clp
  ```

  Note the `{HARDYDIR}` keyword which will be substituted by the Hardy directory as determined by the HARDY environment variable, or hardy installation directory, or `hardy` directory under the user's UNIX home directory.

To delete an assocation, press the **Delete** button. Unfortunately the entry will not be deleted in win.ini (or other) initialisation file unless further items are added: edit the initialisation file by hand if necessary.

Under Windows, it's a good idea to use the File Manager to associate the .hpk extension (see next section) with the runhardy.exe program. You can also edit win.ini to do this. This will allow double clicking on a Hardy package file to run or reset Hardy and load the appropriate files. It will also allow World Wide Web browsers to do the right thing when you click on a .hpk file.

If when trying to use the associations, Hardy does not seem to be loading the application properly, check that the index filename has the correct extension. Hardy needs the extension to be correct for it to load the required definition files properly.

2.7. Packaging Hardy files

Because a single application or document may use several files, maintaining and distributing such files can become inconvenient. Hardy provides a 'composite' file type with extension `.hpk` which packages several Hardy or user files into one file. Hardy recognises the extension and unpacks the files into the standard Hardy area before executing the associated command line contained in the package file (if any). The standard Hardy area is determined by the HARDY environment variable, or if this is undefined, the Hardy installation directory under Windows or, under UNIX, the directory `hardy` under the user's home directory.

As mentioned above, under MS Windows you can associate the .hpk extension with the program runhardy.exe to allow invocation of Hardy when double-clicking on a .hpk file from the File Manager or Web browser. The reason why you need to associate the extension with runhardy.exe instead of hardy.exe is that only one copy of Hardy can run at a time under Windows, and runhardy.exe will communicate with Hardy by DDE if it is already running.

If the .hpk file is identified as residing in a temporary directory (such as TEMP or /tmp), it will be deleted after unpacking.

To create your own .hpk files, invoke the Package tool from the Hardy Tools menu. In the **HPK Filename** text box, enter the full pathname of the package file to be created, with .hpk extension.

In the **Current root directory** text box, enter the path to be subtracted from the real file path when storing in the package file. So if your application is stored in the directory `c:\hardy\apps\test`, you might enter the directory `c:\hardy\apps`. In this case, the package file will contain files such as `test\load.clp`. This allows unpacking into a directory relative to the user's standard Hardy data directory instead of replicating your original directory structure.

Use the **Add** button to add files to the list, and **Delete** to remove them. Check the **Load** checkbox for a file which is to be designated the application file to load immediately (if any).

Enter an optional comment into the **Comment** text box, and in **Association**, enter an association string of the same syntax used in the Association list as invoked from the Preferences dialog. For example:

```
btk,BITKit,-dir {HARDYDIR}\thing -clips load.clp
```

This consists of an extension, an application name, and a Hardy command line. You should not put a -f switch on this command line since an index or application main file will be invoked automatically if appropriate. You can use the keyword `{HARDYDIR}` to stand in for the user's current Hardy directory, where files are unpacked to.

When you have entered the details of the package file, you can save these details as a package file list (.pfl extension) for later loading. Press the **Generate** button to generate the Hardy package file.

3. Using Hardy

3.1. Hardy conventions

Hardy uses the keyboard, mouse and cursor in a regular way, so that you get similar effects from doing similar things anywhere in the system.

3.1.1. Mouse conventions

Generally, Hardy uses the left mouse button only, with the right button being used to provide short-cuts for common operations. We never use other buttons even if they exist.

With each mouse button, we can do three basic things:

1. Click on -- move the cursor to where you want it, then depress and immediately release the button.
2. Double-click on -- move the cursor to where you want it, then depress and immediately release the button twice in rapid succession.
3. Click-and-drag -- move the cursor to where you want it, then depress the button and move the mouse, dragging the cursor to the new screen position, then release the button.

These operations may be modified by the control and the shift keys, so that control-click means: move the cursor to where you want it, then depress and immediately release the mouse button *while holding down the control key*.

We'll talk about "pressing" a button when we mean:

> *move the cursor over the button and click on it*

and "choosing" a menu entry will mean:

> *move the cursor over the menu, depress the button to open the menu and keep it depressed, then move the cursor down to the menu entry required, and then release the button*.

3.1.2. Cursor patterns

Six different cursors are used by Hardy, as follows:

pointer normal default pattern,
text pointer used when entering text,
hand used when you can move items around in a window,
cross-hairs used in a window when something has been selected and can be "dropped" onto the window,
bulls-eye when you move an arc from one point to another on a node,
hourglass/stopwatch used whenever a noticeable delay is expected, such as when loading a file.

3.2. Creating cards

Start Hardy without specifying any command line options, etc. The main control window will appear with the menus **File, Cards, Tools** and **Help**. Initially, there will be nothing on the canvas.

To create your first card, select the **Cards: Create top card** entry. A choice of card types is presented; try the **Text card** option since this is the simplest. Select it and press the **OK** button. A new window appears with a blank text subwindow.

Now you can try making use of hypertext. There are four menus, **File**, **Edit**, **Hyperlinks** and **Help** on this new card. Goto the **Hyperlinks** menu of the new card and select the **Link new card** option. Again, choose a text card. Another new card appears, linked to the original one. Link another card to the new one. Link a further card to the original card. The set of cards you've built up is shown as a tree in the control window. The first card is called the Top Card since it's at the top or root of the hypertext 'tree'.

You can use the **File: Open file** menu entry to associate a text file with the last card you created.

3.3. Browsing

There are two ways in which the term *Browsing* is used in Hardy.

- *Card browsing* gives the user an overview of cards in the current index.
- *File browsing* gives detail on various kinds of Hardy file on disk, and allows loading these at will without having to know which tool to invoke first.

3.3.1. Card browsing

Although the tree of cards is shown in the control window, you may not know which card is which by now, because the cards all have the same title. The title of a card can be changed with the **File: Card title** menu entry.The changed titles are not shown immediately in the control window. You can ask for the tree to be redrawn by going back to the control window and selecting the **Cards: Draw tree** entry. Clicking on a title in this tree index gets you directly to the relevant card.

You can also search on card titles using the **Cards: Search** item.The Card Search dialog allows entry of a search string (or the "*" wildcard to find all cards), and pressing **Search** causes all matching titles to be displayed. Clicking on a title in the index tree brings the corresponding card to the front of the stack.

Press **OK** to quit from Card Search.

3.3.2. File browsing

Instead of loading files individually from different tools and menus, it is possible to use the *File browser*. This is accessible from the *File: Browse files* menu on the control window. The file browser dialog shows a list of files, information about each file, and a list of directories so the user can navigate around the disk.

Single clicking on a file in the **Files** displays information about it in the **Description** area, and double clicking loads this file. Note that almost all Hardy file types are supported in the file browser, although it is not always possible to load displayed files since a specific diagram file, for example, might rely on a diagram type being already loaded. The user will be warned if an attempt is made to load a file whose type is not present.

There are checkboxes to allow selective browsing, and a *Show detail* checkbox to toggle between high detail mode (which can be slow) or lower detail mode (faster).

A restricted version of the file browser is available from other tools, such as the diagram card. The diagram card file browser allows browsing of files whose types match the type of that card.

3.4. Ordering your screen

The screen may be getting a bit cluttered by now. To hide cards, select the **File: Quit card** option on a card's **File** menu. This gets rid of the physical window, while keeping a record of the card in the hypertext index. (This is very different from the **File: Delete** option, which erases the card completely from Hardy's memory.) When you refer to a hidden card from another card, or from the control window, the card will spring into life again. This means that a hypertext index can consist of hundreds of cards without becoming totally unworkable on the screen. You need to keep visible only the cards you are working with at any given time.

If you delete a card, its links with other cards will disappear. Sometimes this means that cards are 'orphaned': they have no parents from which the user can get to the child. These can be linked up again by using the **Cards: Find orphans** option, choosing one of them, and selecting that card by using the **Hyperlinks: Select card** option. You can then go to another card and choose the **Hyperlinks: Link card to selection** option.

3.5. Hypertext links, cards and items

So far, links between information have always involved cards. However, linking a card with another card is only a special case of linking an *item* with an *item*. Hardy considers a card to contain a number of items, and these items may be linked with other items in the same or a different card.

The items in a diagram card are nodes and arcs. In a hypertext card, items are blocks of text.

3.6. Cards and files

Hardy uses files to save information from one session to another. Several different types of file are involved (see *Files used by Hardy* (page 45)). For instance, every card has a file associated with it which will have to be saved individually if the card has been changed. (The exception is any diagram expansion card which is always a 'descendant' of a diagram card. Expansion card contents are saved with the ancestor diagram card, so that an entire hierarchy is stored in one file.) In addition, the main hypertext index which contains pointers to the card files and the links between cards will need to be updated. These files may be saved through the **File: Save** optionon each card *and* on the main Hardy window.

Before saving a diagram to a file, Hardy will make a backup of any file with the same name by copying it to a file with a `.bak` extension. If for any reason Hardy crashes, leaving your diagram file in an unloadable state, or you need to get back to the previous version for some other reason, this backup file is available for editing, etc.

Index files can also be recovered if you forget to save the them. Each card is designed to be able to load a card file independently of the main index (assuming it's of an appropriate type). Therefore you can reconstruct a hypertext index manually, creating new cards and loading them with the appropriate files. This also means that you can import card contents from other sessions.

If you try to exit Hardy without saving the index fileafter changes have been made to it, or without saving changed cards,you will usually be asked if you want to save the changes. The same goes for individual cards which are being deleted.

3.7. Preferences

You can set some system values to suit yourself and save them between sessions to give the default behaviour that you want. You can, for instance, say whether or not you want to show the hyperlinks panel on every card, or what file you want to use to hold your list of diagram files.

These "preferences" are set through the Preferences dialog box which is opened from the "Preferences" entry on the "Tools" menu of the main control window.

To alter the default diagram definition list, select the text entry area labelled "Default definition list" by clicking on it, then type in the name of the file you want to use.

You can also set the sizes of the images used in library and diagram card palettes, again by selecting the text entry area associated with the bitmap in question and changing the contents to the value (in pixels) that you want.

The other preferences have boolean values which correspond to the state of the buttons associated with them: if the button is depressed the value is true, if the button is not depressed the value is false.

Once you have set all the values to be what you want, you press the **OK** button, whereupon the system will accept the values and dismiss the dialog box. The dialog box can be dismissed without changing any values by pressing **Cancel**.

These values are held between sessions in the files `.hardyrc` under Unix,or `WIN.INI` under Windows (see *Hardy resources* (page 44)).

4. Diagram cards

4.1. Creating new diagrams

New diagrams are created through the **Cards: Create top card** menu item of the control window, or the **Hyperlinks: Link new card** menu option of an existing card. If you then select the particular diagram type you wish to use (see *Creating new diagrams* (page 82)), a new diagram card will appear, together with a floating *symbol palette*.

The symbol palette is used for selecting the node and arc types that are available to you for this type of diagram card.

A panel showing all the hyperlinkages to and from the card may be displayed on the right side of the card. You can toggle this to be shown or hidden by using the**Hyperlinks: Toggle link panel display** menu option. Similarly, you can save space on the card by hiding the toolbar that appears at the top of the card below the menu bar through the**Hyperlinks: Toggle toolbar** option on the same menu. This toolbar gives easy access to some of the most used text formatting and diagram layout facilities that are on the **Layout** menu (see *Layout* (page 54)).

4.2. Creating nodes

You add a node to the diagram by choosing the one you want from the selection in the symbol palette. To help you tell which is which, the name of the symbol below the cursor is shown in the status line at the bottom of the diagram card as you move over the symbol palette. When you've found the one you're after, click on the image in the palette, then move your cursor back into the diagram card where it will change its shape to cross-hairs (a large addition sign. This means that you can now place a node on the diagram by clicking where you want it.

Move the node to a different place on the card by holding down the left button over the shape, dragging the mouse to the new position, and releasing the button.

You can add more of these nodes by continuing to click where you want them. You can always tell that clicking will drop something on to the window from the cross-hairs cursor pattern.

You can label nodes so as to tell them apart. See *Object attributes* (page 53).

4.3. Creating arcs

An arc can be drawn between one node and one or more other nodes. Basically, this is done using the right mouse button by clicking-and-dragging from the source node to the destination node where the button is released. (You can draw an arc from a node back to itself: in this case, you'll be asked to confirm that that was what you really meant.) Most of the time this is all that is necessary, however there are cases in which there is more than one type of arc that can join the nodes. There are two ways of telling Hardy which arc you want: either you can select the correct arc symbol from the diagram symbol palette before you join the nodes, or you can wait until after you've asked the system to join the nodes when it will pop-up a dialog box showing you which arcs might be suitable. You then select the node you want and press the **OK** button to dismiss the dialog box. The arc will follow the nodes correctly if you now move one of them.

4.4. Selecting nodes and arcs

Nodes and arcs may be *selected* by holding down the shift key and left-clicking over them. Selection handles are shown around the shape to indicate that it is selected. The shape may be deselected with the same operation. You can have more than one object selected at a time.

A selected node may be resized by clicking-and-dragging on one of its selection handles; if shift is also held down while a corner handle is moved, the shape will go back to its original proportions.

Various other operations may be done on selected objects using the card's **Edit** menu. Arcs may be divided into segments by selecting the arc (shift left click) and choosing the **Edit: Add control point** menu option. A line or spline arc's control points, except for the start and end points, may be dragged with the mouse to make the arc bend. Lines and splines always start off with no intermediate control points (giving a straight line).

4.5. Labelling nodes and arcs

Nodes and arcs can have more than one label if they have more than one *text region*. Nodes only have more than one text region if they are *composite symbols* (made up from more than one basic shape (see *Node symbols* (page 71)). All arcs have three text regions: one at its start, one at its middle, and one at its end. There will be one label for each text region. Each label has its own specified appearance (its colour, font family and size, etc) and its own text string which is held in one of the node's attributes. To change the label, you need to change the value of the attribute holding its text (see *Object attributes* (page 53)).

4.6. Object attributes

An *attribute* is a defined component of the node which can be given a text string as its value by the user through the Attribute Editor.

You open the the Attribute Editor by control-left-clicking on the node so that a window pops-up with a list of all the node's attributes.The node label is usually called 'label' or 'name'. The value of the selected attribute name is shown in the text entry area below the list of attributes.

Under Unix only, you can now position the cursor in the text entry area by clicking, then type in characters directly from the keyboard. To delete the character before the cursor use the Back Space key; to delete the one after it use the Delete key.

Otherwise, you must press the **Edit** button below the text area whereupon a editor window will appear. Which editor is used depends on your value for the EDITOR environment variable. When you have made your changes and dismissed your editor, you must press the **OK** button on the dialog box that also popped up so as to tell Hardy that you have finished with the editor. After you have made all the changes you want, press the **OK** button and Hardy will accept them and dismiss the Attribute Editor. Or you can abandon all your changes and leave the attribute values unaltered by pressing **Cancel**.

You can add a further attribute to the node by pressing the **Add attribute** button. This will ask for the name of the attribute and add it to the list. You can then give it a value as before. And you can remove an attribute that isn't required by selecting it from the list and pressing the **Delete attribute** button. As before, no changes are made to your diagram until you press **OK**, and you can always throw all your changes away by pressing **Cancel**.

Arcs have attributes in exactly the same way as nodes, and exactly the same Attribute Editor is used to change them.

4.7. Multi-way arcs

As well as being able to join one node to another node, you can join one node to several others (of the same type) with a single *multi-way arc*. You can do this in two different ways. Either you select all of the destination nodes then right-drag from the source node to any one of the destination nodes, or you can connect an additional node to an existing multi-way set-up, by first selecting the*junction symbol* then right-dragging from the common source node to the new node, as usual, to create a new connection from the existing junction symbol to the new node.

If, for aesthetic purposes, you want to alter the way the multi-way arc is shown, you can move the junction symbol around by first selecting it, then left-dragging it as though it were a node symbol.

4.8. Deleting nodes and arcs

There are two ways of deleting images:you can either select the shape(s) and use the **Edit: Cut** menu entry, or you can right click on the image and select the pop-up menu's **Delete Image** item. You can clear the whole card by using the **Edit: Select all** menu item followed by **Edit: cut**.

The major advantage of using **Edit: Cut** is that the images deleted are actually copied into an internal buffer (and, under Windows, the Clipboard), so you can still change your mind and replace the image by selecting the **Edit: Paste** menu entry.**Edit: Paste** will add the contents of the clipboard back into the diagram. The same buffer is used by **Edit: Copy** which copies the selected objects into the buffer but doesn't delete their images from the diagram. This *cut-and-paste* mechanism will also work for copying images from one card to another of the same type. Again, you can copy the entire card easily by using **Edit: Select all**.

The entire card will be deleted if you use the **File: Delete card** menu entry, but this cannot be undone.

4.9. Layout

The **Layout** menu provides several options to help create neat diagrams. To use the **Align vertically** option, select several nodes and then choose the option. The first node selected is taken to be the one which the others should be aligned with, in the vertical direction. The **Align horizontally** option does the same thing in the horizontal direction.

The **Straighten lines** option acts on a selected *multiline*, i.e. a line which has had control points inserted. It will attempt to align the segments of the line horizontally and vertically, according to the direction each segment is already tending towards.

The **To front** option places the selected image at the front of the diagram, so that it will be displayed on top of any overlapping images. Similarly, the **To back** option places the selected image at the back of the diagram, so that it will be fully or partially obscured by any overlapping images.

Hardy can also automatically layout a group of nodes as a tree with the **Layout: Format tree** option. The selected node is taken as the root of the tree and the nodes connected to it will be arranged as a tree on its right hand side. The format of this tree can be altered by using the Diagram Card Options dialog box which is opened through the card's**File: Options** menu entry. See *Diagram card options* (page 59).

The **Layout: Apply definition** menu option lets you update a displayed card if you have, in the meantime, changed its Diagram Type definition,and existing values of the various properties of the displayed objects will be updated as appropriate. The **Layout: Zoom** option allows you to change the scale of the entire diagram. Reducing the scale will allow you to view a larger diagram area and, hence, more objects for the same physical size of card on your screen.

If you have any doubts about whether or not your new layout has been properly displayed, use the **Edit: Refresh display** menu entry to carry out a full re-display of the card.

4.9.1. Arc attachment points

Some diagram types may be defined so that arc images stay attached to a particular side of a node image (or vertex in the case of triangles, diamonds and other polyline symbols), depending on where you place the start and end points of an arc when creating it. Nodes which impose this behaviour on arcs have their *Use attachments* toggle switched on from the Diagram Type Manager.

Circles, ellipses and rectangles have four attachment points, one at each point of the compass, triangles and diamonds have three and four respectively, one at each vertex. When you create a new arc by sweeping from one node to another, the nearest attachment point for each node is found and used. When another arc is drawn, all arcs on the same attachment point are spaced out evenly. Note that this spacing is *not* performed if the node's attachment mode is not switched on.

It may be that the arc spacing that Hardy chooses causes arcs to overlap untidily. You can order the arcs on a particular attachment point by selecting the arc and, while holding down the left mouse button, dragging the endpoint to a new preferred position by the attachment point. The cursor changes to a bullseye during this operation. If the attachment point itself is wrong, the right mouse button may be used to drag the endpoint to the correct attachment point on the same node. Again, the cursor changes to a bullseye.

4.9.2. The toolbar

Each diagram card can have a toolbar displayed at the top below the menu bar. You can save space on the card by hiding this toolbar through the card's **Hyperlinks: Toggle toolbar** menu entry. The toolbar is used to give easy access to some of the most used layout and formatting facilities which are mostly otherwise available through menu options and image properties.

1. Left justify text (**Edit: Format text**).
2. Centre text (**Edit: Format text**).
3. No centring or justification (**Edit: Format text**).
4. Fit images to contents.
5. Don't fit images to contents.
6. Vertically align selected images on left .
7. Vertically align selected images on centre (**Layout: Align vertically**).
8. Vertically align selected images on right.
9. Horizontally align selected images on top
10. Horizontally align selected images on centre (**Layout: Align horizontally**).
11. Horizontally align selected images on bottom
12. Straighten lines (**Layout: Straighten lines**).
13. Format tree (**Layout: Format tree**).
14. Choose font (**Edit: Change font**).

4.10. Hyperlinks

You can *hyperlink* individual nodes, arcs and cards to other cards. This helps you organise your diagram by allowing you to set up a hierarchy which can give you a top-down view of it, presenting only as much detail at any level as is appropriate.

4.10.1. Linking arcs and nodes to cards

You can link a node or arc to an existing card or to a new card.

To link the object to a new card, right click on the image and choose the **Hyperlink to new card** option. This will ask you to specify what type of card you want (see *Creating new diagrams* (page 52)), and construct a new card of this type which will be linked to the object in question. You will see the new card reflected in the display of the index tree in the control window, and, if the object was a node, you'll probably see its boundary highlighted to tell you that it is linked to another card (though this property can be switched on or off).

An alternative way of linking an object to a new card is to select the object you want to link, then select the **Hyperlinks: Link new card** option and proceed as before.

Left clicking on the image will now take you to the new card in subsequent browsing, as would clicking on the appropriate item on the card's link panel.

If you want to link the object to an existing card, you should select the card by its **Hyperlinks: Select card** menu entry, then right-click on the object to pop-up the menu so you can chose the **Hyperlink to selection** entry. Alternatively, you can select the object then use the **Hyperlinks: Link card to selection** entry on the card.

4.10.2. Linking cards to cards

One card can be linked directly to another card by selecting the card itself through the **Hyperlinks: Select card** menu entry. This will work even when there are no nodes or arcs present on the card. You can then link it to a new card by using the **Hyperlinks: Link new card** option and proceeding as above, or link it to an existing card by using the **Hyperlinks: Link card to selection** entry on the card you want.

4.10.3. The hyperlinks panel

All links to and from a card or any items on the card can be shown in the Hyperlinks panel which may be displayed on the righthand side of the card. However, as it takes up quite a lot of space on the card, you can hide it through the card's **Hyperlinks: Toggle link panel display** menu entry. The same menu entry will show it if it is already hidden.

You can display any card listed in the panels by left-clicking on its entry.

The default order of links in the *Links* panel may not be appropriate, especially for applications such as on-line manuals. Use the **Hyperlinks: Order links** option, to bring up the Order Items dialog box. Press on the *Source* titles in the desired order. The *Destination* list shows the new order.

4.11. Diagram expansion cards

In some cases a complex diagram will need several cards. If you create separate diagram cards in the normal way, each diagram will be saved in a separate file. This may be acceptable if the diagrams are only conceptually related, but may not be good enough if you wish to display the same node or arc on more than one diagram, but only have to type in the attributes for one node or arc. The way this is achieved is explained in *same object, different card* (page 57), below.

First, how can we expand a top-level diagram so we can show more detail? If you have a node which you wish to expand, select it and use the**Edit: New expansion** option. This creates a new expansion card whose title is the name of the node, and which can be reached by clicking on the node. Alternatively, if there is no node you wish to expand, select nothing and again choose the **Edit: New expansion** option. This will link a new expansion card to the existing card so that, conceptually, the whole card, rather than an image, is linked to the expansion.

Now when you save the top-level diagram card, all its associated expansion cards are saved as well in the one file. For this reason, expansion cards don't have their own file saving option.

An expansion card is accessed in the same way as any other linked card, either via the index tree in the control window, by left-clicking on an item, or by selecting an entry in the hyperlinks panel.

4.11.1. Same object, different cards

Returning to the question of having the same image on multiple cards. You will require this when you need to ensure that changing the attributes of one image changes the attributes of the other(s).

You can achieve this for nodes by selecting the node on one card, going to another, and there selecting the **Edit: Duplicate image for same object**menu entry. This will *not* make a duplicate node---it merely creates a new image for the existing, selected node. There is an underlying concept of node and arc for which the visual representation is a 'handle'. When an entirely new node image is created, a node is also created. When a node image is deleted, the node is only deleted if there are no other images for this node still in existence.

You can copy an arc image in a similar way by selecting the arc image, then linking up two nodes on the destination card. Instead of selecting an arc type, use the bottom option in the pop-up menu **Use selected arc object**. This makes a new image for the same selected arc.

You can prove that these images refer to the same underlying object by changing the label text. All related images will have their labels changed to reflect the new text.

IMPORTANT NOTE: this will not work *across diagram files*, since all diagram files are stand-alone and cannot reference other files. Only cards in the same hierarchy of diagrams can be used.

4.12. Containers

Some nodes can be set-up to be *containers*. These are nodes which can contain other nodes (of specified types) so that, if you move the container node, its contents are moved with it. This can look the same as having nodes super-imposed on each other, but their behaviour is different.

There are two special things that you can do with containers.

1. You can move nodes into and out of the container .
2. You can split a container into sub-containers which you can then split further if you want.

You move nodes in and out of containers in the same way as you move them normally. However, if you move a node that was outside a container across the container's boundary, a dialog box will be popped-up to ask you whether or not you want it inside the container. If you prefer, you can leave a node sitting over the container: it will look the same as if it were inside but it won't move when the container moves. Similarly, when you move a node that is contained in a container across the container boundary, you will be queried to check whether or not you really want it to be moved outside the container.

To sub-divide a container (or a sub-container), you control-right-click on it and a menu will pop-up with entries that allow you to split the container into two: either horizontally (so the sub-containers lie beside each other), or vertically (so the sub-containers lie above and below each other). (Other menu entries let you change the appearance of the container's boundary. See *Symbol properties* (page 70).)

4.13. Printing diagrams

Under the UNIX and X environment, Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) output is provided. An entire hierarchy of diagrams may be printed to EPS files in one shot using the **File: Print hierarchy to files** menu option. See also *Differences between the X and Windows 3.1 versions* (page 96) on platform-specific features for recommended ways of printing out diagrams under Windows.

4.13.1. Printing under X

The diagram/expansion card **File: Print PostScript** option pops-up a Printer Settings dialog box which lets you change the default settings.

Printer Command: the printer command, e.g. `lpr`.

Printer Options: any command line options for your printer, e.g. `-PE17`.

Portrait: if on, will print in portrait mode. If off, will print to landscape mode.

Print to file: if on, will prompt for a filename to print to. If off, the printer command will be invoked with the printer options appended. Note that the preview toggle over-rides this option if on.

Preview only: if on (the default), the `ghostview` program is invoked to preview the PostScript output. Obviously **ghostview** needs to be installed and in your path. Previewing allows you to adjust the scaling and translation without wasting too many trees.

X/Y Scaling: scales the image.

X/Y Translation: translates the image.

To include a diagram in a LaTeX file, first print it to a PostScript file. Of the many possible ways of including the file in your LaTeX document, the preferred technique is to use a macro package such as `psbox` to scale and position the image based on its size. This is possible since Hardy outputs EPS files which contain size ('bounding box') information. To use *psbox*, put the following statement near the top of your document:

```
 \input psbox.tex
```

You may then uses commands such as the following:

```
\begin{figure}
  $$\psboxto(0.9\textwidth;0cm){screendump.ps}$$
  \caption{Example Hardy session under X}\label{screendump}
\end{figure}
```

The dollar signs centre the image. The "`0.9\textwidth;0cm`" indicates that the image is to be 90% of the normal width of the text on the page, but scaled proportionally in the vertical dimension. A non-zero value sets that dimension, possibly distorting the image. To omit dimensions, use the `psbox` macro instead (see documentation for the `psbox` package).

4.13.2. Printing under MS Windows

Hardy for Windows provides the same printing facilities as described above (see *Printing under X* (page 58)) for X through the**File: Print PostScript** and **File: Print hierarchy to file** options. If you have a word processor which can scale EPS images (such as LaTeX), you could include an EPS diagram in a document. A better alternative may be to use the **Edit: Copy** option.

Using the clipboard

Windows 3 has the concept of a *clipboard*, viewed using the *clipboard viewer*. Applications may exchange data using the clipboard. Types of data that may be exchanged include bitmaps and *metafiles*, which are 'recordings' of the drawing commands used to build up a picture, and are easily scaled without losing resolution, unlike a bitmap.

Hardy for Windows has an option in the diagram card **Edit** menu for copying a metafile version of the diagram to the clipboard. The user-defined scaling factor (set from the options dialog box called from **File: Options**) will affect the size of the diagram passed to the clipboard. You may then paste the image into another application for editing or printing out. For example, importing into the drawing program Corel Draw splits up the diagram into its component shapes, ready for fine-tuning. Importing into Windows Paintbrush makes it into a bitmap, and this may be the easiest and cheapest way of printing out a Hardy for Windows diagram.

4.14. Diagram card options

The **File: Options** menu pops-up a small window with some options that apply to that diagram card.

1. **Label Arcs with abbreviation** If on, will cause arcs to be labelled with the abbreviation stored in the arc definition. Useful on monochrome displays and non-colour printers.

2. **Snap to grid** If on, images will be positioned to the nearest grid line (conceptual, not visible) so that images are easier to align neatly. The default is on.

3. **Colour** If on, colour is used; if off, non-white colours will be painted in black. This applies to printing too.

4. **Quick edit mode** By default off, this inhibits diagram redraws when simple edit operations are performed. With quick edit mode off, the whole diagram will be redrawn if one node is moved, which can be slow for large diagrams.

5. **Scale** Enter a new number between 0 and 1 to scale the diagram. This currently has no effect on printing.

6. **Grid spacing** The grid spacing determines the coarseness of image positioning, if the snap to grid option is on. The default is 10 pixels.

7. **Print file** Allows the user to change the filename used for printing this diagram to PostScript.

8. **Auto-layout options** These are for use with the **Layout: Format tree** menu of a

diagram card. They allow values to be set for the left and top margins, the width and height, and the X and Y spacing between nodes.

4.15. Diagram editing summary

The following is an alphabetical summary of common diagramming operations.

Bending an arc Select the arc, add control point(s) with the **Edit: Add control point**option, drag control points. Turn the curve into a straight line by deleting all but two control points.

Copying images Select images on a diagram card of the same type, go to the destination card and select the **Edit: Copy images(s)** option. The images will be copied (with new underlying node and arc objects). An alternative is to select the source card with **Hyperlinks: Select card** before the copy operation, in which case the whole card is copied.

Creating an arc Holding down the right mouse button, drag from the start node to the end node. Choose an arc type from the pop-up menu.

Creating a diagram card Either select **Cards: Create top card** on the main control window, or select **Hyperlinks: Link new card** on a particular card. Choose an appropriate diagram card.

Creating a node Select a node symbol on the floating diagram symbol palette, move the cursor to where you want the node to be positioned, and click the left mouse button.

Deleting an image Either select the image(s) and choose the **Edit: Cut** option, or right-click on the image and choose the **Delete image** option.

Editing attributes Same as for *Labelling an image*. Press on the **Edit** button to use a text editor for editing large attribute values.

Expanding a node Select the node, choose the **Edit: New expansion** option. A new expansion card is created. Expanding without selecting a node causes the new card to be linked to the original card, rather than to an image within it.

Labelling an image Pop-up the attribute editing window by using control-left-click.

Linking an image to a new card Right-click on the image and select the **Link new card** option. Left-click on the image to go to the card subsequently.

Loading a diagram If you have saved an associated Hardy index file, use the -f option on the command line (see above) or use the **File: Open file** option on the control window. Otherwise, create a card of the appropriate diagram type, and select the **File: Open** option, entering the filename.

Maximising card space Use the **Hyperlinks: Toggle link panel display** option and resize the card to fill the screen. Note that, unless you start in the middle of the canvas, (see *Scrolling around* below), you may have to move your diagram around node by node to extend up or left.

Moving node(s) Select a node or nodes, and drag one to the desired position. If more than one image is selected, all selected images will be moved.

Printing/previewing Choose the **File: Print PostScript** option, set **Preview only** for a preview or switch it off to print to the printer, set **Print to file** if that's wanted as well, then press **OK**. Enter any printer command options in the **Printer Options** text item. Change the scaling and/or translation to fit the picture to a page.

Resizing a node Select image and drag control points. Dragging a corner point and holding down shift retains the proportions.

Saving a diagram Select the **File: Save file** option, enter filename (not path). Also choose the control window's **File: Save file** option to save the Hardy index file (with a pointer to the diagram file).

Scaling diagrams Either choose the **File: Options** menu item in the Control Window and enter a new number for the scaling factor, or choose the **Layout: Zoom** item for the card.

Scrolling around Left-click click on the up and down arrows of the scroll bars, or drag the scroll bar. (Under Windows, dragging the scroll bar is slow since the diagram is repeatedly redrawn. Under X, bitmaps are used for scrolling which makes it much faster.)

Selecting an image Shift left click; same for deselecting. Select multiple images by left-dragging on the canvas and releasing when the rubber band encompasses all desired images. Deselect all selected images by left-clicking on the canvas.

Wrapping label text Select image(s), choose **Edit: Format text** option.

4.16. Mouse functionality

4.16.1. Left button

1. Click on node -- the name of the node is displayed in the card's status line. If a current annotation is selected that is legal for the node, it is dropped onto the node at the mouse position.
2. Click on arc -- the name of the arc is displayed in the card's status line.
3. Click on a position in the canvas away from a node or arc -- if a node is currently selected on the floating palette (indicated by the *cross-hairs*cursor), a new node is placed on the canvas at the mouse position.
4. Click-and-drag a node -- the node moves to the new mouse position. If the final position of the node is over a container which can contain it, the user will be asked whether or not the node should be placed *inside*the container or simply left *on top* of it.
5. Click-and-drag a selected arc label -- the label moves to the new mouse position.
6. Click-and-drag a node selection handle -- the node image is rescaled, based on the direction of movement of the mouse.
7. Click-and-drag a divided node division control handle -- the division is moved to the new mouse position.
8. Click-and-drag on the selection handle of an arc at the end where it meets a node for a diagram type that defines arc attachment points -- the *bullseye* cursor appears and the handle may be moved to a different position at the *same* attachment point.
9. Click-and-drag on the canvas away from a node or arc -- a rubberband box appears which the user can drag so that it surrounds card items, i.e. nodes and arcs. When the user releases the mouse button, the rubberband box disappears and the surrounded nodes and arcs are selected and their selection handles are displayed.
10. Shift-click on a node or arc -- if the node or arc was not already selected, its selection handles are displayed, and the name of the node or arc is shown in the card's status

line. If the node or arc was already selected, it becomes deselected and its selection handles disappear.

11. Control-click on a node or arc -- if the node or arc type has defined attributes, an Object Attribute Editor dialog box appears which allows attribute values to be set or changed. See *Object attributes* (page 53).
12. Click on a card title in the *Links* or *Reverse Links*scrolling lists -- the selected card is opened.

4.16.2. Right button

1. Click on a node or arc -- a Node or Arc Action Menu containing a list of useful actions appears. Selecting an entry causes the appropriate action to be performed. An Action Menu provides a short cut for accessing popular actions as an alternative to first selecting the node or arc and then selecting an entry in one of the diagram card menus. The actions available are:

    1. Edit attributes;
    2. Hyperlink to selection;
    3. Hyperlink to new card;
    4. Unlink item;
    5. Delete image.

2. Control-click on a divided node -- the Divided Object Properties dialog box pops up. See *Divided nodes* (page 73).

3. Control-click on a container -- a menu pops up with four entries:

    1. **Split horizontally** -- the region of the container node image in which the cursor is positioned will be split into two sub-regions lying alongside each other.
    2. **Split vertically** -- the region of the container node image in which the cursor is positioned will be split into two sub-regions lying above and below each other.
    3. **edit left edge** -- this allows the image properties of the left edge of the sub-region of the container node image in which the cursor is positioned to be tailored. The Division Properties dialog box appears, see *Symbol properties* (page 70).
    4. **edit top edge** -- this allows the image properties of the top edge of the sub-region of the container node image in which the cursor is positioned to be tailored. The Division Properties dialog box appears, see *Symbol properties* (page 70).

4. Click-and-drag a node or node annotation -- the outline of an arc is drawn from the node or node annotation following the mouse. If the node or node annotation has attachment points, the arc will come from the nearest attachment point to the initial mouse position.

    If the mouse button is released over a node or node annotation and there is a single legal link in the diagram type definition between the initial node and this one, then that arc is drawn.If more than one type of link is legal between the nodes, the currently selected arc in the floating palette will be used to resolve the ambiguity if possible, otherwise a dialogue is entered into with the user to specify which type of arc is intended. When a legal arc has been drawn, the status line of the diagram card says:

    "`Linked a` *start node type name*`to a end node type namewith a` *arc type name*".

    If the mouse button is released over a node and there is not a legal link in the diagram type definition between the initial node and this one, then the status line of the diagram card says:

"`No legal arcs from a `*start node type name*`to a `*end node type name*".

If the mouse button is released over one of several selected nodes, and there is a legal multi-way arc between the nodes, a multi-way arc is drawn between the initial node and all the selected nodes. If *Auto dog-leg* is set in the Junction Editor, an extra control point will be inserted and the connections will be constrained to the horizontal and vertical.

If the mouse button is released over the canvas away from a node, no arc is created.

5. Click-and-drag the selection handle of an arc that is attached to a node which has multiple attachment points defined for it -- the handle will follow the mouse so it can be moved to a *different* attachment point of the node, where the button is released.

5. Text cards

The text card is the simplest form of card provided by Hardy. It consists of a text subwindow which displays the contents of a file.

5.1. Editing text cards

When a text card is first created, there is no file associated with it. Open a file with the **File: Open file** option; if you edit the file later, you can use the **File: Save file** or **File: Save as...** options to save the file.

Text card files are edited through the **Edit: Run editor** option. This uses the EDITOR environment variable to allow you to specify your favourite editor. Under Unix, you must save the file and exit the editor to return control to Hardy; under Windows, a child process returns control to the parent immediately. Alternatively, under Unix only, the subwindow can be used to edit the text directly.

As with any card, the title may be changed using the **File: Card title** option.

To get back to the main Hardy control window, if it's buried under a pile of other windows, use the **File: Goto control window** option.

To delete the card, use the**File: Delete card** option. Remember that the difference between quitting (**File: Quit card**) and deleting a card is that quitting is merely getting rid of the physical display for the card, not deleting the actual card representation in the hypertext index. If you have many new cards, you may wish to quit some of them to avoid a build up of windows. Deleting, on the other hand, deletes the card from the hypertext index, although it does not in general delete any file which may be associated with that card.

5.2. Linking text cards

As a text card doesn't contain any items, you can only link the entire text card to other items or other items to the entire text card.

To link a new card to the current text card, choose **Hyperlinks: Link new card** and choose a card type to create when prompted. You will now get to the linked card by clicking on the relevant title in the link panel display.

The default order of links in the Links panel may not be correct, especially for applications such as on-line manuals. Use the **Hyperlinks: Order links** option, and press on the Source titles in the desired order. The Destination list shows the new order.

If the Links panel on the right-hand-side of the card is required, select the **Hyperlinks: Toggle link panel display** option. Use the same option again to hide it.

5.3. Mouse functionality

5.3.1. Left button

1. Click on a position in the text subwindow -- *under X only*, the text editor cursor will be positioned at the click.

2. Click on a card title in the *Links* or *Reverse Links* scrolling lists -- the selected card is opened.

5.3.2. Right button

No use is made of the right mouse button.

6. Hypertext cards

The hypertext card is similar to the text card, in that it may display plain text files and has some of the same menu options.

However, it has the following distinguishing features:

- Text blocks may be marked with the mouse, and given different font and colour attributes. A text block is a hypertext item, in the same sense that a diagram node or arc is an item, and may be linked with other cards and items.

- The text is not directly editable, unlike the text card under X, although a text editor may still be invoked.

- The hypertext card has the concept of*hypertext types* in the same sense as *diagram types* (see *Diagram card types* (page 82)). Each hypertext card is an instance of a user-defined type, although you can access a default type of hypertext card by creating a card called simply "Hypertext card".

- Hypertext cards have the concept of *hypertext sections*. You may define a new section by marking a block using a section block style. The **Goto** menu allows you to walk sequentially through the sections, and to go to the first section.

6.1. Hypertext blocks

Although the hypertext card may display ordinary text, it will most often be used to mark blocks of text and associate them with other cards and items. This causes codes to be stored in the text. These are interpreted specially by Hardy, and are in LaTeX compatible format.

To mark a new block, drag the mouse holding the left button down from the top left of the intended block to the bottom right (this may require some practice). Remember that you should drag a bounding box that doesn't extend beyond the text characters you wish to include: the box should be *just* inside the characters at the edge of the block. For instance, if selecting the word 'thing', the bounding box should start at the top left of the letter 't', and stop at the bottom right of the letter 'g'.

The selected block will go cyan (colour displays) or reverse video (monochrome displays). Any selected block, whether new or old, will use this highlighting. A block will only be remembered by Hardy if you choose a *style* for it with the **Style** menu. This allows you to set font and colour attributes for the block. Once the style has been set, the block is a Hardy hypertext item and can be linked with other cards and items in the usual way. You may remove a block by selecting it (shift-left click) and choosing the **Edit: Clear block** menu item. Blocks without a style set will simply be forgotten when deselected (shift-left click).

6.2. Editing hypertext cards

Apart from adding and clearing blocks, running the editor from the **Edit: Run editor** menu entry is the only way of editing a hypertext card's contents. You do this in exactly the same way as you do for a text card (see *Editing text cards* (page 64)). Be sure that you don't disturb the embedded block codes. It will be more convenient to do as much editing as possible *before* marking blocks.

6.3. Mouse functionality

6.3.1. Left button

1. Click on a block within the text canvas -- the corresponding card to which the block is hyperlinked will be selected and displayed, if one exists. If the block is not hyperlinked, no action results.

2. Click-and-drag within the canvas -- will define and select a block specified by its top left corner being at the initial click position and its bottom right being at the release position. This block is 'temporary' until it has had a style set through the **Style** menu. A block will always contain a piece of continuous text.

3. Shift-click on a 'temporary' block within the canvas -- the block is deselected and its highlight is removed.

4. Shift-click on a block with a set style -- if the block was not already selected, it becomes selected; if the block was already selected, it becomes deselected.

5. Click on an entry in either the *Links* or *Reverse Links* list boxes -- the corresponding card is selected and displayed.

6.3.2. Right button

1. Click on a block with a set style -- a menu appears, presenting some of the most used actions associated with blocks for easy access.

7. Media cards

The media card is similar to the text card, in that it may display plain text files and has some of the same menu options. However, it has the following distinguishing features:

- Text blocks may be marked with the mouse, and given different font and colour attributes. A text block is a hypertext item, in the same sense that a diagram node or arc is an item, and may be linked with other cards and items.

- The text is not directly editable, unlike the text card under X, although a text editor may still be invoked.

- The media card has the concept of *media types* in the same sense as *diagram types* (see *Diagram card types* (page 82)). Each hypertext card is an instance of a user-defined type, although you can access a default type of media card by creating a card called simply "Media card".

Please note that the media card is experimental and may not be present in public distributions of Hardy.

7.1. Media blocks

Although the media card may display ordinary text, it will most often be used to mark blocks of text and associate them with other cards and items.

To mark a new block, drag the mouse holding the left button down.

The selected block will go cyan (colour displays) or reverse video (monochrome displays). Any selected block, whether new or old, will use this highlighting. A block will only be remembered by Hardy if you choose a *style* for it with the **Style** menu. This allows you to set font and colour attributes for the block. Once the style has been set, the block is a Hardy hypertext item and can be linked with other cards and items in the usual way.

You may also mark text up using the default font attributes, accessed by via the items at the top of the **Style** menu. Marking up in this way is purely visual and does not create a hypertext block.

Currently, only one block may have a given start or end point, and blocks may not overlap. Eventually it is intended to remove at least the first restriction. Blocks may not currently be cleared once created, except by clearing all blocks, or by deleting the text and reinserting it. Bitmaps may not be used as blocks.

7.2. Editing media cards

You may edit the text directly. Blocks will move around with the text; but if you delete text at the start or end of the block, you may delete the block markers and cause the block to disappear.

Pictures may be inserted into the media card by selecting the **Edit: Insert Image** menu item. A pictures is stored as a reference to the bitmap filename, so this file should be present in the same place when you load the media file.

7.3. Mouse functionality

7.3.1. Left button

1. Left click in the media card to set the caret position, where text is inserted.
2. Control-left click on a block within the text canvas -- the corresponding card to which the block is hyperlinked will be selected and displayed, if one exists. If the block is not hyperlinked, no action results.
3. Click-and-drag within the canvas -- this will select an area of text, for later marking with a font or block style. A block will always contain a piece of continuous text.
4. Shift-left click on a block to select it.
5. Click on an entry in either the *Links* or *Reverse Links* list boxes -- the corresponding card is selected and displayed.

7.3.2. Right button

1. Click on a block with a set style -- a menu appears, presenting some of the most used actions associated with blocks for easy access.

8. Symbols

Symbols are used to construct the images that are displayed on a diagram card. There are two main types of symbol, node symbols and arc symbols, and a further type for *arc annotations* (such as arrowheads). All the symbols that are recognised for a particular type of diagram will be gathered together and presented as a floating palette. Within the palette the symbols are divided into Node symbols and Arc symbols. Annotation symbols may also be shown separately.

A basic range of symbols is provided by Hardy in the Standard Symbol Library for use when designing new diagram types. You can also construct new shapes when you require by using the Node Symbol Editor and the Arc Symbol Editor (see *Node symbol editor* (page 76) and *Arc symbol editor* (page 79) respectively). New symbols may also be held in symbol libraries for later use in exactly the same way as for the standard symbols. Symbol libraries are organised by the Symbol Librarian (see *Symbol librarian* (page 73).

Generally, symbols are used in two different ways. The first, and more general, is the symbol that is available in a symbol library. At this level, the symbol has got a defined shape, colour and other general properties. It is then available for customising for use in the displayed image of a particular type of node or arc in a particular type of diagram. Its shape cannot be changed, but its colour, etc, properties may be over-ridden and other specialist properties can be added. This will be done through the Node Type Editor or the Arc Type Editor (see *Node type editor* (page 84) and *Arc type editor* (page 88), respectively).

8.1. Symbol properties

Symbols are made up of simple parts, largely lines and areas. Every line will have a width (in pixels), a style (solid, dashed, etc), and a colour.

Areas are more complicated. They can be *primitives*,normally provided through the Standard Symbol Library, or they can be *composites* made up from primitives or other composites. A primitive symbol has an outline with exactly the same properties as other lines (width, style, and colour), and an area with a colour property (termed the *fill colour*) bounded by the outline. A composite symbol will be made up from simpler symbols; its properties are the properties of its individual sub-symbols.

8.1.1. Metafiles

There are some shapes which would be (at best!) very difficult to construct from other standard symbols. In order to allow arbitrary shapes to be used, Hardy supports the use of *metafiles*. Metafiles let you add new primitive symbols to your repertoire.

Metafiles define drawings in terms of pens (for outlines), brushes (for "fill" areas), and shapes. As their contents are all relative to a starting position, the shape may be placed wherever it's required and it can be scaled without loss of resolution. When a metafile is imported into Hardy from an external package for use as a node or arc symbol, selected pen and brush instructions can be intercepted in such a way that the metafile-defined symbol will have the same outline and fill properties as any other symbol.

This is done using the Metafile Colour Assignment dialog box which is opened from the Node Symbol Editor when editing a symbol which has been defined through a metafile. The different operations involved in defining the shape are shown in the list box labelled *Operations*. Each pen and brush operation is uniquely identified so that it may be distinguished and added to the lists of *Outline operations* (pens only) and *Fill operations* (brushes only) by selecting it and pressing the **Add** button. Only these selected pens and brushes will be altered if the symbol's outline or fill characteristics are changed later.

The **Clear** buttons will clear any entries in the relevant list boxes.

8.1.2. Arc symbols

If we look at arc symbols, we see that they are basically lines which may carry annotations (arrowheads, etc). If present, arc annotations are treated as part of the arc symbol and will share common properties, i.e. changing the colour of the arc will change the colour of the annotation. (Arc annotations have additional properties: see *Arc annotations* (page 71).)

Every arc has a width (in pixels), a style (solid, dashed, etc), and a colour.

Arcs have three regions: their start, middle and end regions. Annotations and labels are usually placed in one or other of these. Each region will support only a single label, though several annotations can appear there.

8.1.3. Arc annotations

Arc annotations are symbols such as arrowheads that are used to decorate arcs. New symbols may be imported through metafiles (see *Metafiles* (page 70)). They can either be part of an arc symbol, or they can be added incrementally to a particular arc symbol as required when a diagram is being constructed. Annotations may be placed in one of the start, middle or end regions of the arc, and several annotations can appear in the same region.

Arc annotations can be customised by setting parameters which control their size and their position on the arc. Size is the length of the annotation image in pixels. Position has three separate aspects:

1. there is the gap, in pixels, allowed between one annotation and the next one in the same region;

2. there is the X offset of the annotation from the start of the arc. This is specified as a fraction: 0.0 means the start, 0.5 the middle, and 1.0 the end.

3. there is the Y offset between the mid-point of the annotation symbol and the arc: a positive offset moves the annotation above the arc, a negative one moves it below. This is specified in pixels.

8.1.4. Node symbols

Node symbols are primitive or composite shapes. A primitive shape has an outline and an enclosed area. The outline can be specified in terms of its width (in pixels), style (solid, dashed, etc), and colour.The enclosed area will have a colour: its *fill colour*. Two special types of primitive symbol are provided: divided nodes and polyline symbols. These have additional special properties (see *Divided nodes* (page 73) and *Polyline symbols* (page 73)).

Composite symbols are made up from other symbols, selected from existing Symbol Libraries and glued together using the Node Symbol Editor(see *Node symbol editor* (page 76)). A composite symbol will reflect the properties of its sub-symbols. These can be changed as a whole, i.e. the composite is treated as though it had a single outline and a single enclosed area like a primitive, or sub-symbols can be selected and treated individually.

As well as the general display properties, node symbols have additional properties reflecting their behaviour.

1. Use attachments -- this controls where arcs will attach to the node symbol. If attachments are not used, arcs will appear as though they were connected to the centre of the node symbol; if attachments are used, arcs will appear as though they were connected to the nearest defined attachment point. See *Atachment points* (page 72) for further details.

   If the attachment point chosen by the system is not the one you want, you can move the connection by selecting the arc and right-click-and-dragging the appropriate arc selection handle to a *different* attachment point of the same node.
2. Space attachments -- if attachments are in use, they may be spaced or not. If attachments are not spaced, all arcs will appear as though they were connected directly to attachment points; if they are spaced, the arcs will automatically separate themselves at each attachment point where two or more join.

   If the ordering at any particular attachment point is not what you want, you can select the arc and left-click-and-drag the appropriate selection handle to a different position at the *same* attachment point.
3. Shadow -- if shadowing is set, the symbol will have a "shadow" of the same shape in black and offset slightly.
4. Fixed width -- if this is set, the width of the symbol cannot be changed once it is in use.
5. Fixed height -- if this is set, the height of the symbol cannot be changed once it is in use.

Additional properties hold if the symbol has been defined through a metafile (see *Metafiles* (page 70)).

8.1.5. Attachment points

A node symbol may have attachment points defined (see *Node symbols* (page 71)) to which arcs can be connected. These rotate with the symbol when necessary.

The symbols provided in the Standard Symbol Library have pre-defined attachment points:

1. divided rectangles have a control point in the centre of their top and bottom edges, and a further control point in the centre of the vertical edges of each region,

2. polyline Symbols (triangles and diamonds) have attachment points at each of their vertices,

3. other primitive symbols have attachment points in the centre of each edge of their bounding box,

4. composite symbols have attachment points at each attachment point of their component sub-symbols, and additional attachment points in the centre of each edge of the overall bounding box.

The user may define the attachment points for symbols that are imported as metafiles, and may define additional attachment points for standard symbols. This is accomplished through the Attachment Point Editor which is invoked from the **Attachment points...** button of the Node Symbol Properties dialog box.

The dimensions of the symbol (its bounding box, in pixels) are shown in the message area, and the identifiers of all current user defined attachment points are displayed in the *Attachment points* list box. Pressing the **New** button generates a new unique identifier which is entered into the *Attachment points* list and selected. Alternatively you can select an existing identifier in the list. In either case, the currently selected identifier will be shown together with its position as X and Y offsets (in pixels) from the symbol's reference point. These values can now be changed: selecting another entry, or pressing **New** again or **OK**, will accept them.

You can remove an entry by selecting it in the list and then pressing **Delete**.

8.1.6. Divided nodes

Divided node symbols are supplied by the Standard Symbol Library for efficiency. They provide rectangular shapes with more than one text regionso that more than one label can be displayed. This means there are two differences between these and normal primitive symbols.

You can alter the position of the divisions between the different regions by selecting the symbol. This will display its selection handles, and you will see an extra handle at the middle of each division. You can left-drag these to move the divisions to new positions within the existing rectangle. Note that you can't move one division past another.

You can tailor the appearance of these divisions through the Divided Object Properties dialog box which is invoked by control-right-clicking on a divided object in the Node Symbol Editor (see *Node symbol editor* (page 76)). This shows the line colour and style for each of the divisions (top one first), and these can be altered in the usual way.

8.1.7. Polyline symbols

A polyline symbol is a primitive used for constructing polygonal node symbols. Standard polyline symbols are supplied through the triangle and diamond symbols which can be modified to produce most other shapes needed.

Unlike the other standard node symbols, polyline symbols have control points at each of their vertices. These will be displayed when the symbol is selected, and can be moved around by left-dragging on them. Additional control points may be added to or deleted from polyline symbols in the Node Symbol Editor through the **Edit: Add control point** and **Edit: delete control point** menu items. Combining the number of control points with their positions allows you to define arbitrary polygonal shapes.

Every legal polyline symbol must have at least *one* control point.

8.2. Symbol librarian

8.2.1. Appearance and functionality

Symbols are organised in libraries which are managed by the Symbol Librarian. The Symbol Librarian may be invoked from the **Tools: Show symbol librarian** menu of the Control Window.

The *Symbol libraries* list box displays the names of all libraries which are currently open. The Standard library, containing the primitive symbols, is always available.

8.2.2. Buttons

The buttons are arranged in two groups, one providing general facilities, the other providing facilities for individual symbol libraries.

General

1. **OK** -- the Symbol Librarian and any open Symbol Libraries are dismissed. If changes have been made to any Symbol Libraries and these have not been saved, the user is asked whether these changes should be saved.
2. **Load library** -- open and load a Symbol Library from disk using a File Selector dialog box with the filter initialised to `*.slb`. Add its name to the end of the *Symbol Libraries* list.
3. **Save library** -- save the contents of the currently selected Symbol Library to its associated disk file. If no disk file is defined for the library, the File Selector dialog box will appear.
4. **Load list** -- open and load the Symbol Libraries whose names are specified in `diagrams.def`. Display their names in the *Symbol Libraries* list box.
5. **Save list** -- save the names of the Symbol Libraries given in the *Symbol Libraries* list box into the definition list file (`diagrams.def`).
6. **Help** -- for Hardy under X, the wxHelp program is started and information on the Symbol Librarian is displayed. Under Windows, the Windows Help system is started at the appropriate place in the Hardy manual.

Symbol libraries

1. **New** -- create a new Symbol Library, add it to the list of loaded Symbol Libraries, and make it the current selection.
2. **Edit name** -- change the name of the currently selected Symbol Library.
3. **Show** -- display the currently selected Symbol Library.
4. **Delete** -- delete the currently selected Symbol Library from the list.

8.2.3. Mouse and cursor functionality

Left button

1. Clicking on an entry in the *Symbol Libraries* list box selects the Symbol Library with that name.

2. Double-clicking on an entry in the *Symbol Libraries* list box selects that Symbol Library and proceeds as though the **Show** button had been pressed.

Right button

No use is made of the right mouse button.

Cursor

No special cursor pattern is used.

8.3. Symbol libraries

8.3.1. Appearance and functionality

A Symbol Library is opened from the **Load library** or **Show** buttons of the Symbol Librarian, or by Double-clicking on an entry in its *Symbol libraries* list box.

The name of the Symbol Library is displayed in the title bar. The status line is used to display the name of a symbol.

The Standard Library is provided with the system. The user cannot add further symbols to it, or delete symbols from it.

8.3.2. Menu options

The Symbol Library has two menus -- **File** and **Help**.

File menu

1. **File: Edit selected symbol** -- if a symbol is selected in the Symbol Library, the Arc or Node Symbol Editor is opened as appropriate, see *Node symbol editor* (page 76)and *Arc symbol editor* (page 79), and the symbol is read in so that it can be altered.
2. **File: Delete selected symbol** -- if a symbol is selected in the Symbol Library and the user confirms that the symbol should be deleted, it is deleted.
3. **File: Load symbol from metafile** -- a symbol definition is read into the Symbol Library from a file specified by the File Selector dialog box and named through the Symbol Name dialog box.

   The name of the new symbol is entered into the text entry area labelled *Name of new symbol*. The checkboxes allow the properties of the symbol to be set: whether it is a node symbol or an arc annotation symbol, and whether the symbol should be rotated or not when it is used as an arc annotation.
4. **File: Exit symbol library** -- the Symbol Library is dismissed.

Help menu

1. **Help: Help on symbol library** -- for Hardy under X, the wxHelp program is started and information on the Symbol Library is displayed. Under Windows, the Windows Help system is started at the appropriate place in the Hardy manual.

8.3.3. Mouse and cursor functionality

Left button

1. Clicking on an unselected symbol in the palette selects that symbol. Clicking on a selected symbol deselects that symbol.

Right button

1. Clicking on a symbol in the library palette causes the same action as **File: Edit selected symbol**, opening the appropriate Symbol Editor for that symbol. See *Node symbol editor* (page 76) and *Arc symbol editor* (page 79). This has no effect for symbols held in the Standard Symbol Library.

Cursor

The cursor takes standard default patterns in the Symbol Library. However, when a node or arc symbol is selected in the library, the cursor in the Node or Arc Symbol Editor canvas will change to the *cross-hair* pattern. This indicates that selecting any position on the Symbol Editor canvas will add the selected symbol to the Symbol Editor (see *Node symbol editor* (page 76)and *Arc symbol editor* (page 79)).

As the cursor is moved over the palette, the name of the symbol under the cursor is shown in the status line.

8.4. Node symbol editor

8.4.1. Appearance and functionality

The Node Symbol Editor allows the diagram type designer to create new node symbols from existing symbols and to modify existing symbols. It is invoked from the **Tools: Show symbol editor** menu of the Control Window, or by right-clicking on a node symbol in a (non-Standard) symbol library. As well as shape, the Node Symbol Editor will support tailoring of node symbol properties.

The title bar shows the name of the symbol under construction, and the canvas displays the symbol currently being edited. The list box labelled *Objects* starts with the entry `Composite`, if a new symbol is being created, or the name of the symbol being edited. This is followed by the names of the different constituent sub-symbols in the same order as they are added to the canvas. Several names may be selected at once. The lower list box, labelled *Constraints*, details the different constraints in the order in which they were invoked.

8.4.2. Menu options

The Node Symbol Editor has three menus -- **File, Edit** and **Help**.

File menu

1. **File: Add to library** -- add the symbol under construction to the selected symbol Library. If no Symbol Library is selected, the Symbol Librarian is opened so that a selection can be made. The user is asked to supply a name for the symbol through a Text Entry dialog box.
2. **File: Update** -- if the Node Symbol Editor was called from the **File: Edit selected symbol** menu of a Symbol Library, the symbol in the Symbol Library is updated and the Node Symbol Editor is dismissed.
3. **File: Exit** -- the Node Symbol Editor is dismissed and, if a symbol was being constructed and has not been saved, the user is asked whether it should be saved or not.

Edit menu

1. **Edit: Add constraint** -- pops up a Choice dialog box of available constraints from which one can be chosen. A Constraint Properties dialog box then allows the constraint to be tailored. See *Node symbol constraints* (page 78).
2. **Edit: Edit symbol name** -- a Text Entry dialog box is popped up to allow a new name to be specified for the symbol under construction.
3. **Edit: Edit selected object** -- a dialog box is popped up which presents information about the current properties of the object selected in the *Objects* list box, and allows them to be changed. See *Node symbols* (page 71).
4. **Edit: Edit selected constraint** -- the Constraint Properties dialog box is opened to allow values of the constraint selected in the *Constraints* list box to be changed. See *Node symbol constraints* (page 78).
5. **Edit: Delete selected object** -- the object selected in the *Objects* list box is removed.
6. **Edit: Delete selected constraint** -- the constraint selected in the *Constraints* list box is removed.
7. **Edit: Add control point** -- if the object selected in the *Objects* list box is a polyline object, a further control point is added to produce a shape with one vertex more than the previous shape.
8. **Edit: Delete control point** -- if the object selected in the *Objects* list box is a polyline object, an arbitrary control point is removed to produce a shape with one vertex fewer than the previous shape. A polyline object cannot have fewer than one control point.
9. **Edit: Make symbol [not] a container** -- if the symbol has been imported from a user-defined library (i.e. not the Standard library), it may be given container properties(see *Containment* (page 87)). If the symbol has container properties set, this menu item is changed to allow them to be unset.
10. **Edit: Deselect all** --- all current selections are cleared.
11. **Edit: Refresh** -- clears the canvas and redisplays the symbol under construction.

Help menu

1. **Help: Help on node symbol editor** -- for Hardy under X, the wxHelp program is started and information on the Node Symbol Editor is displayed. Under Windows, the Windows Help system is started at the appropriate place in the Hardy manual.

8.4.3. Mouse and cursor functionality

Left button

1. Click on item in the *Objects* list box -- if the entry is not already selected, it is added to the current selection; if it is already selected, it is now deselected. The composite object under construction may be selected/deselected in this manner. All selected items will be highlighted in the list box and have their selection handles displayed in the canvas. Unselected items are not highlighted in the list box and do not have their selection handles displayed.
2. Click on a position in the canvas not on a node or arc when a symbol is selected in a Symbol Library (indicated by the *cross-hairs* cursor pattern) -- a copy of the selected symbol is dropped onto the canvas at the selected point. The symbol in the Symbol Library is then deselected.
3. Click-and-drag an item in the canvas -- the entire composite symbol under construction

is moved as required. Note that all the current symbols are moved together. Relative movement is specified by defining suitable constraints.

4. shift-Click on an item in the canvas -- if the item is not already selected, it is added to the current selection; if it was already selected it is now deselected. All selected items will be highlighted in the list box and have their selection handles displayed in the canvas. Unselected items are not highlighted in the list box and do not have their selection handles displayed.
5. Click-and-drag a selection handle in the canvas -- the corresponding symbol is rescaled in the direction of the dragging operation.
6. Click-and-drag a divided node symbol division control point in the canvas -- the division moves to the new position.
7. control-Click-and-drag a polyline control point in the canvas -- the point is moved to the new position, altering the shape of the symbol.
8. Click on an entry in the *Constraints* list box -- the appropriate constraint with that name is selected, the constrained objects are highlighted by displaying their selection handles in the canvas, and the constraint description is displayed in the status line.

Right button

This provides short-cuts for commonly used menu entries.

1. Click on an item in the canvas -- provides the **Edit: Edit selected object** facility (see above).
2. control-Click on an item in the canvas -- opens the Divided Object Properties dialog box for a composite symbol. See *Divided nodes* (page 73).

Cursor

1. The *hand* pattern is used within the canvas to indicate that items may be moved.
2. The *cross-hairs* pattern is used when a node symbol is selected in a Symbol Library (see *Symbol libraries* (page 75)), to indicate that Clicking on a position on the canvas will place a copy of the symbol there. Once the selected symbol has been placed on the canvas, the symbol is deselected within the Symbol Library and the cursor reverts to the normal pattern.

8.4.4. Node symbol constraints

Node symbol constraints are used to specify the relative positioning of sub-symbols within composite symbols under two different circumstances:

1. when constructing new node symbols through the Node Symbol Editor;
2. when describing drop sites for a particular node type (see *Node annotation symbols* (page 87)).

A constraint is always applied to at least two objects, one of which is taken as the reference relative to which the others are constrained. Normally the reference object is the first one that was selected selected. When defining drop sites, the reference object is the actual drop site, and the other object(s) will be the node annotation symbol(s) which will not be specified until a particular diagram card is constructed. We refer to this as a *partially satisfied constraint*.

A fixed repertoire of constraints is provided:

Above: The Y co-ordinates of the bottom horizontal edges of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be less than the Y co-ordinate of the top horizontal edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Below: The Y co-ordinates of the top horizontal edges of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be greater than the X co-ordinate of the bottom horizontal edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Left of: The X co-ordinates of the right hand vertical edges of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be less than the X co-ordinate of the left hand vertical edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Right of: The X co-ordinates of the left hand vertical edges of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be greater than the X co-ordinate of the right hand vertical edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Centre horizontally: The X co-ordinates of the centres of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects and the constraining object will be the same.

Centre vertically: The Y co-ordinates of the centres of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects and the constraining object will be the same.

Centre: The co-ordinates of the centres of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects and the constraining object will be the same.

Top-aligned: The Y co-ordinates of the top horizontal edges of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be the same as the Y co-ordinate of the top horizontal edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Bottom-aligned: The Y co-ordinates of the bottom horizontal edges of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be the same as the Y co-ordinate of the bottom horizontal edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Top-midaligned: The Y co-ordinates of the centres of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be the same as the Y co-ordinate of the top horizontal edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Bottom-midaligned: The Y co-ordinates of the centres of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be the same as the Y co-ordinate of the bottom horizontal edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Left-aligned: The X co-ordinates of the left hand vertical edges of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be the same as the X co-ordinate of the left hand vertical edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Right-aligned: The X co-ordinates of the right hand vertical edges of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be the same as the X co-ordinate of the right hand vertical edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Left-midaligned: The X co-ordinates of the centres of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be the same as the X co-ordinate of the left hand vertical edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Right-midaligned: The X co-ordinates of the centres of the bounding boxes of the constrained objects will be the same as the X co-ordinate of the right hand vertical edge of the bounding box of the constraining object.

Once the required constraint has been chosen, an offset can be given between the reference points of the constraining and the constrained objects. This is specified as X and Y spacings, in pixels.

8.5. Arc symbol editor

8.5.1. Appearance and functionality

The Arc Symbol Editor allows the diagram type designer to define and modify the appearance of arc symbols held in Symbol Libraries. It is invoked from the **Tools: Show symbol editor** menu of the Control Window, or by right-clicking on an arc symbol in a (non-Standard) symbol library.

There are three menus -- **File, Edit** and **Help**. The canvas displays the current properties of the arc image. It is initialised to a solid black line.

8.5.2. Menu options

File menu

1. **Edit: Add to library** -- the arc symbol under construction is added to the currently selected Symbol Library. If no library is selected, a warning message is shown and the Symbol Library Manager is opened, if it is not already open, so that a selection can be made.
2. **File: Update** -- if the Arc Symbol Editor was called from the **File: Edit selected symbol** menu of a Symbol Library, the symbol in the Symbol Library is updated and the Arc Symbol Editor is dismissed.
3. **File: Exit** -- the Arc Symbol Editor is dismissed and, if a symbol was being constructed and has not been saved, the user is asked whether it should be saved or not.

Edit menu

1. **Edit: Edit symbol name** -- a Text Entry dialog box is popped up to allow a new name to be specified for the symbol under construction.
2. **Edit: Edit arc properties** -- a dialog box is popped up which presents information about the current properties of the selected arc symbol and allows them to be changed. See *Arc symbols* (page 71).
3. **Edit: Edit annotation properties** -- a dialog box is popped up which presents information about the current properties of the arc annotations and allows them to be changed. See *Arc annotations* (page 71).
4. **Edit: Clear symbols** -- any arc annotations that have been specified are cleared from the displayed arc symbol.
5. **Edit: Refresh** -- clears the canvas and redisplays the symbol under construction.

Help menu

1. **Help: Help on Arc Symbol Editor** -- for Hardy under X, the wxHelp program is started and information on the Arc Symbol Editor is displayed. Under Windows, the Windows Help system is started at the appropriate place in the Hardy manual.

8.5.3. Mouse and cursor functionality

Left button

1. Clicking on the canvas when an arc annotation symbol is selected in a Symbol Library will place that symbol at the right hand end of the displayed arc symbol. Arbitrary, multiple annotations may be constructed. When an annotation has been added to the current symbol, it is deselected in its Symbol Library.

Right button

No use is made of the right mouse button.

Cursor

1. The *hand* cursor is the default within the canvas.
2. The *cross-hairs* cursor within the canvas indicates that an arc annotation symbol is currently selected in a Symbol Library.

9. Card types

This section is concerned with setting up customised card types.This is done by the Card Type Designer, and we will reserve the term *user* throughout this section to refer to a person who makes use of a type of card that the Card Type Designer has defined. A user doesn't want to see the diagram type definition, and will be restricted in node and arc repertoire, node shape, etc. by the decisions you, the card type designer, have made in the card type definition.

Diagram and hypertext type definitions are held in files, usually with the file extension of `.def`, and it is necessary for the definition to be loaded before a diagram of that type can be created or edited (obviously!). When Hardy starts up, it looks for a definition list file (by default called `diagrams.def`) which contains a list of these filenames, each file containing a card type definition (see *Files used by Hardy* (page 45)). The consequence to the user of adding a new type will be a new menu item in the dialogue requesting a card type selection when the user comes to create a new card (i.e. an instance of that card type).

Standard types of text card and hypertext card are provided. New types of diagram card (see *Diagram card types* (page 82)) and hypertext card (see *Hypertext card types* (page 92)) can be created.

The different types of card available can be organised by the card type designer into *categories* if required. This allows different types which are in some way related to be presented as a group, rather than mixed up with other types.

9.1. Diagram card types

9.1.1. New diagram types

You create new diagram types or modify existing ones, through the Hardy Diagram Type Manager which is accessed from **Tools: Show diagram type manager** on the Hardy Control Window.

You'll be presented with three lists. The first allows you to select a diagram type definition to work with, the second shows you all the node definitions for the selected diagram type, and the third shows you its arc definitions. As this implies, a diagram type definition consist of the diagram type name, a list of node definitions, and a list of arc definitions.

The operation of the Diagram Type Manager is controlled by various buttons. To create a new diagram type, press the **New** button underneath the *Diagram types* list, and you'll be asked to supply a new name for the card type. (You may supply a category for it as well, though this isn't necessary.) To edit a diagram type, select the diagram type name and press the **Edit** button.

The buttons are organised into four groups: one for general operations, and one each for the three lists.

9.1.1.1. General

1. **OK** -- the Diagram Type Manager is dismissed, and, if changes have been made to any diagram type definitions, you are asked whether these are to be saved or not.
2. **Load type** -- the File Selector dialog box appears with the filter string set to `*.def`. You can select a particular diagram type definition file which will be opened, when its node and arc types will be listed in the *Node types*and *Arc types* list boxes.
3. **Save type** -- the File Selector dialog box appears, and you can save the particular

diagram type definition file.

4. **Load list** -- the File Selector dialog box appears to allow you to specify the name of the diagram definition list file. By default, this is `diagrams.def`.
5. **Save list** -- the File Selector dialog box appears with the filter initialised to `*.def` to allow a name for the definition file to be selected.
6. **Custom menu** -- a dialog box appears, allowing you to specify, for the selected diagram type, the title of a custom menu, and to add or delete menu items from this custom menu. See *Custom menus* (page 94).
7. **Options** -- a dialog box appears, allowing you to specify, for the selected diagram type, various properties of the diagram type that affect the appearance of a card of that type. These properties include whether the palette is displayed, the toolbar is displayed, and which menus are present.
8. **Help** -- for X versions of Hardy, the wxHelp program is started and the Hardy manual is loaded and opened at the section concerning the Diagram Type Manager. For Hardy for Windows, the Windows Help system is started at the appropriate place in Hardy's manual.

9.1.1.2. Diagram types

1. **New** -- a Diagram Type dialog box appears, allowing you to specify the new diagram type required in the text entry area, labelled *Type*. Types may be grouped together by defining *categories* and then assigning each type to a particular category. If required, a category can be selected from the list of existing categories shown in the *Categories* choice box, or a new category name can be typed into the *Category* text input area. When finished, you should press the **OK** button to accept your specification, when your new name will appear in the *Diagram types* list, and Hardy will select it. Otherwise, you can abandon the operation by pressing **Cancel**.
2. **Edit name** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears, allowing you to edit the name of the selected diagram type. The new name replaces the previous name in the existing entry in the *Diagram types* list.
3. **Delete** -- the selected diagram type is deleted, and the topmost diagram type in the list becomes selected.

9.1.1.3. Node types

1. **New** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears, allowing you to type in the name of the new node type. An entry with that name then appears in the *Node types* list and the newly created entry is selected. The Node Type Editor then appears (see *Node type editor* (page 84)), allowing you to edit the properties of the new node type (see *Node images* (page 86)).
2. **Edit** -- the Node Type Editor appears, showing the information for the selected node type (see *Node type editor* (page 84)).
3. **Delete** -- the selected node type is deleted, and the topmost entry in the *Node types* list becomes selected.

9.1.1.4. Arc types

1. **New** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears, allowing you to specify the name of the new arc type. An entry with that name then appears in the *Arc types* list and the newly created entry is selected. The Arc Type Editor then appears(see *Arc type editor* (page 88)), allowing you to edit the properties of the new arc type.
2. **Edit** -- the Arc Type Editor appears, showing the information for the selected arc type

(see *Arc type editor* (page 88)).

3. **Delete** -- the selected arc type is deleted and the topmost entry in the *Arc types* list becomes selected.

9.1.1.5. Left button

1. Clicking on an item in the *Diagram types* list selects that diagram type, and its node and arc types are displayed in the *Node types* and *Arc types* lists.
2. Clicking on an item in either the *Node types* or *Arc types*lists selects that item. Any previous selection in the list will be deselected.
3. Double-click an item in either the *Node types* or *Arc types* lists selects that item and proceeds as though the corresponding **Edit** button had been pressed. Any previous selection in the list will be deselected.

9.1.1.6. Right button

No use is made of the right mouse button.

9.1.1.7. Cursor

No special cursor pattern is used.

9.1.2. Node type editor

The Node Type Editor allows you to tailor the properties of a node type. This includes the displayed symbol shape, scale, colour, etc, as well as the user defined attributes. The Node Type Editor is invoked by selecting an entry in the *Node types* list of the Diagram Type Manager.

A text entry area, labelled *Name*, allows the node type to be named. One list box, labelled *Attributes*, allows attributes of the node to be defined and edited. The other list, labelled *Text regions*, allows individual text regions to be selected so that the format and contents of the text string displayed in the region may be modified.

The preview canvas displays the current appearance of the node and is *not* directly editable. You can load a symbol into the editor either by selecting the symbol you require from a symbol library (see *Symbol libraries* (page 75)) and then clicking on the preview canvas. Alternatively, to modify an existing symbol, you can right-click on the symbol in a library (*not* the standard symbol library) to open the editor with the symbol loaded. Changing the properties of the node will change its appearance in the preview canvas.

Buttons are organised into three groups: one for general operations and one each for the *Attributes* and *Text regions* lists.

9.1.2.1. General

1. **OK** -- the Node Type Editor is dismissed and, if changes have been made to node definitions, you will be asked whether these should be saved or not.
2. **Image properties** -- pops up a dialog box which allows the properties of the displayed image to be altered (see *Node images* (page 86)).
3. **Drop sites** -- if the symbol in the preview canvas has partially satisfied constraints(see

Node symbol constraints (page 78)), the Drop Sites dialog box appears (see *Drop sites* (page 86)).

4. **Containment** -- the Containment dialog box is opened, see *Containers* (page 57), allowing the node to become a container.
5. **Symbol librarian** -- invokes the Symbol Librarian (see *Symbol librarian* (page 73)).
6. **Help** -- for X versions of Hardy, the wxHelp program is started and the Hardy manual is loaded and opened at the section concerning the Node Type Editor. For Hardy for Windows, the Windows Help system is started at the appropriate place in Hardy's manual.

9.1.2.2. Attributes

1. **New** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears allowing a new attribute name to be specified.
2. **Edit** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears, allowing you to edit the name of the selected attribute. The new name replaces the previous name in the existing entry in the *Attributes* list.
3. **Delete** -- deletes the currently selected attribute.

9.1.2.3. Text regions

1. **Edit** -- if an entry is selected in the *Text regions* area, the Region Properties dialog box will be opened, allowing the properties of the selected text region to be tailored. See *Regions* (page 87).

9.1.2.4. Left button

1. Click on any point in the preview canvas to replace the symbol currently being displayed with the node symbol currently selected in a Symbol Library. The Symbol Library symbol will then be deselected. If no Symbol Library has a currently selected node symbol, no action results.

2. Click-and-drag a symbol in the preview canvas to change the displayed position of the symbol.

3. Click on an item within the *Attributes* list box selects that item.

4. Double-click on an item within the *Attributes* list box selects that item and proceeds as though the **Edit** button had been pressed.

5. Click on an item within the *Text regions* list box selects that item. The name of the selected region is shown in the preview canvas.

6. Double-click on an item within the *Text regions* list box selects that item and proceeds as though the **Edit** button had been pressed.

9.1.2.5. Right button

No use is made of the right mouse button.

9.1.2.6. Cursor

1. The *hand* pattern is the default cursor in the preview canvas.
2. The *cross-hairs* pattern in the preview canvas indicates that a symbol is currently selected in a Symbol Library.

9.1.3. Node images

The node images specified for a particular diagram type are based on symbols held in some symbol library (see *Symbol libraries* (page 75)), but tailored specially for that diagram type through the Node Image Properties dialog box that is invoked by pressing the **Image properties** button of the Node Type Editor.

In addition to the basic properties that it already has, see *Node symbols* (page 71), when a node symbol is used in a diagram type it has additional features:

1. Abbreviation format string -- determines how abbreviated references to the node (e.g. in the status line) should be written. See *Format string* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).
2. Width -- the default width of the node in pixels when it is first placed on to a diagram card. If the *fixed width* property is also set (see *Node symbols* (page 71)), the width will always be this value.
3. Height -- the default height of the node in pixels when it is first placed on to a diagram card. If the *fixed height* property is also set (see *Node symbols* (page 71)), the width will always be this value.
4. whether or not attachments are used -- see *Attachment points* (page 72).
5. whether or not connected arcs are equally spaced at attachment points -- see *Attachment points* (page 72).
6. whether or not the Node Image should be highlighted if it is hyperlinked to another Item.
7. whether or not the symbol should be displayed on the Symbol Palette -- this will prevent the user from creating particular symbols which you may need to control.

9.1.4. Drop sites

Drop sites may be defined for node symbols by establishing partially satisfied constraints (see *Node symbol constraints* (page 78)) which will be fully satisfied by node annotation symbols (see *Node annotation symbols* (page 87)) which can be "dropped" onto the node symbol when a particular diagram card is being constructed.

Drop sites are established or modified for a node symbol through the Drop Sites dialog box which is invoked from the **Drop sites** button of the Node Type Editor. This will show you the names of all existing drop sites for that node type in the *Drop sites* list.

To add a new drop site, press the **New** button to open the Drop Site Editor (see *Drop site editor* (page 86)). Its name will be added to the list on exit. To modify an existing drop site, select its entry in the list, press the **Edit** button, and the Drop Site Editor will again be opened. If you want to throw a defined drop site away, select it in the list and press **Delete**.

9.1.5. Drop site editor

The Drop Site Editor allows you to name a drop site and its associated symbol, and to define its constraints. It is invoked from the **New** and **Edit** buttons of the Drop Sites dialog box (see *Drop sites* (page 86)).

The drop site name is specified in the *Drop site name* text entry area. You specify the node annotation symbol associated with the drop site by selecting a node symbol in a symbol library, then pressing the **Assign new symbol** button. The name of the symbol will be shown in the label of the*Annotation name* area. This is a logical name that you can specify by typing it in.

The range of partially satisfied constraints, previously defined for the node symbol through the Node Symbol Editor (see *Node symbol editor* (page 76)), is displayed in the *Available constraints* list box. You build up the particular combination of constraints that you want, shown in the *Drop sites constraints* list box. by using the**Add -->** and **Delete** buttons. The **Add -->** button adds the currently selected entry in the*Available constraints* list to the end of the *Drop sites constraints* list. The **Delete** button deletes the currently selected entry from the*Drop sites constraints* list.

The **Edit symbol properties** button will open the Node Annotation Symbol Properties dialog box to allow you to tailor the properties of the annotation symbol (see *Node annotation symbols* (page 87)).

9.1.6. Node annotation symbols

A node annotation is a node symbol which is associated with a particular node type. It may be "dropped" onto a node at a defined *drop site* when a particular diagram is being built. Arcs may be connected to this symbol, and it can have attachment points in the same way as to any other node symbol.

The Node Annotation Symbol Properties dialog box allows you to tailor a node annotation symbol for a particular node type. It is invoked from the **Edit symbol properties** button of the Drop Site Editor.

As well as the usual properties governing the appearance of the symbol (see *Node symbols* (page 71)), you can specify whether or not attachments are used, and whether or not arcs to attachment points should be equally spaced.

9.1.7. Containment

Containers are nodes which can *contain* other nodes of specified types (see *Containers* (page 57)). The Containment dialog box allows you to set the container properties for a particular node type. It is invoked from the **Containment** button of the Node Type Editor Editor.

The box labelled *Available nodes* allows you to choose from the recognised node types for the diagram or the "*" wild card, signifying any type. Once you have selected a type you want, press the **Add** button and it will be added to the end of the *Containable nodes* list which displays the different types of node that may be contained in this type of container node. If you want to change your mind and delete an entry, select it in the *Containable nodes* list, press **Delete**, and it will disappear from the list.

9.1.8. Regions

Labels are displayed in text regions, one label per region. Each label needs two parts: the text string to be displayed, and formatting information to determine how it looks. The text of an item's label is usually held as one of the item's attributes (see *Object attributes* (page 53)). The formatting information for the region is stored and altered through the Region Properties dialog box which is invoked by selecting the region from the *Text regions* list of the Node Type Editor and then pressing its **Edit** button.

The text entry area labelled *Format string* allows the text region format string to be specified (see below). The text entry area labelled *Point size* accepts an integer specifying the text size. Choice boxes labelled *Format mode*, *Text colour*, *Font family*, *Font style*, and *Font weight* allow choices to be made from the range of values supported by Hardy.

The format string

The format string is a simple way of specifying the label for a region of a node or arc. In particular, it allows you to display the values of an item's attributes in its image.

The format string may contain literal text and control characters (introduced by a "%" character) as follows:

1. `%%` -- inserts the "%" character,
2. `%n` -- inserts a new line,
3. `%1 - %9` -- inserts a node or arc attribute, where the number corresponds to the position of the attribute in the attribute list as displayed in the node or arc type dialogue.

By convention, the first attribute is used to hold an item's label, so the default format string is `%1`. A more complex example might be `Name: %1%nValue: %2`. The `%n` control character may also be inserted in arc and node attributes, for example to prevent overlapping by adding some manual formatting.

9.1.9. Arc type editor

The Arc Type Editor allows you to tailor the properties of an arc type. This includes the displayed line shape, permitted annotations, scale, colour, etc, as well as user defined attributes. The Arc Type Editor is invoked through the **New** and **Edit** buttons of the *Arc types* scrolling list of the Diagram Type Manager.

Arc attributes and text regions (labels) are treated in the same way as for nodes in the Node Type Editor (see *Node type editor* (page 84)), with an arc always having three regions defined: *Start*, *Middle*, and *End*. These are displayed in the *Text regions* list. Two additional lists, *Arc constraints* and *Arc images*, allow arc constraints and arc images to be specified and selected.

The displayed image of the arc in the preview canvas, labelled *Arc image* followed by its name, will reflect its current image properties and the current choice of annotations. It is not directly editable, but changing the properties of the arc will change its appearance in the preview canvas.

If a Junction Symbol has been selected through the Junction Editor (see *Multi-way arcs and junction symbols* (page 91)), it will be displayed separately in the preview canvas and labelled *Junction image*.

Buttons are arranged in five groups, a general group for the editor and one each for the *Attributes*, *Text regions*, *Arc constraints*, and *Arc images* list boxes.

9.1.9.1. General

1. **OK** -- the Arc Type Editor is dismissed, and, if changes have been made to arc definitions and these have not already been saved, you will be asked whether they are to be saved or not.
2. **Junction editor** -- pops up the Junction Editor dialog box, see *Multi-way arcs and junction symbols* (page 91), to allow a junction symbol to be chosen and given appropriate properties. If a Junction Symbol is chosen, it will be displayed in the preview canvas.
3. **Symbol librarian** -- opens the Symbol Librarian.
4. **Help** -- for X versions of Hardy, the wxHelp program is started and the Hardy manual is loaded and opened at the section concerning the Arc Type Editor. For Hardy for Windows, the Windows Help system is started at the appropriate place in Hardy's manual.

9.1.9.2. Attributes

1. **New** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears, allowing a new attribute to be specified.
2. **Edit** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears, allowing you to edit the name of the selected attribute. The new name replaces the previous name in the existing entry in the *Attributes* scrolling list.
3. **Delete** -- deletes the currently selected attribute.

9.1.9.3. Text regions

1. **Edit** -- if an entry is selected in the *Text regions* area, the Region Properties dialog box will be opened, allowing the properties of the selected text region to be tailored. See *Regions* (page 87).

9.1.9.4. Arc constraints

1. **New** -- an Arc Constraint dialog box appears allowing a new constraint to be specified (see *Arc constraints* (page 90)). The choice boxes in this dialog box contain all the nodes types defined for this diagram type.
2. **Delete** -- deletes the currently selected constraint.

9.1.9.5. Arc images

1. **New** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears, allowing a name to be given for the new image. When a name has been specified, the Arc Image Properties dialog box appears (see *Arc images* (page 90)).
2. **Edit** -- the Arc Image Properties dialog box appears (see *Arc images* (page 90)), allowing you to edit the properties of the arc symbol for the currently selected arc type.
3. **Delete** -- deletes the currently selected arc symbol.

9.1.9.6. Left button

1. Click on a point in the preview canvas, if a node annotation symbol is currently selected in any Symbol Library, places that symbol on the nearest text region of the arc symbol currently being displayed. Any annotation symbol already at that site will be replaced. The Symbol Library symbol will then be deselected. If no Symbol Library has a currently selected arc annotation symbol, no action results.

2. Click on an item within the *Attributes* list box selects that item.
3. Double-click on an item within the *Attributes* list box selects that item and proceeds as though the **Edit** button had been pressed.
4. Click on an item within the *Text regions* list box selects that item. The name of the selected region is shown in the preview canvas.
5. Double-click on an item within the *Text regions* list box selects that item and proceeds as though the **Edit** button had been pressed.
6. Click on an item within the *Arc constraints* list box selects that item.
7. Click on an item within the *Arc images* list box selects that item.
8. Double-click on an item within the *Arc images* list box selects that item and proceeds as though the **Edit** button had been pressed.

9.1.9.7. Right button

No use is made of the right mouse button.

9.1.9.8. Cursor

No special cursor pattern is used.

9.1.10. Arc constraints

The Arc Constraints dialog box allows you to specify between which types of node the arc is legal. It is invoked from the **New** button of the *Arc constraints* area of the Arc Type Editor.

The two boxes allow you to choose from the types of node that are defined for the diagram type or the "*"wild card, signifying any type. They are labelled *Constrain from* and *Constrain to*, in the expected manner. When you have chosen a type for each end, press the **OK** button to dismiss the dialog box.

9.1.11. Arc images

The Arc Image Properties dialog box allows you to tailor the image properties of an arc type symbol, such as its line width, style, colour, etc. The Arc Image Properties dialog box is invoked by selecting an entry in the *Arc images* scrolling list in the Arc Type Editor and pressing the **Edit** button. This dialog box will also appear when a new Arc Image is being defined, after specifying the Arc Image's name.

In addition to the basic properties that it already has, see *Arc symbols* (page 71), when an arc symbol is used in a diagram type, it has additional features:

1. Abbreviation format string,
2. whether the arc is drawn as a straight line or a spline curve and, if it is a straight line, whether it should be drawn as a spline if it connects one node to the same node.
3. whether annotations are *divisible* or not, i.e. presented in a separate section on the diagram symbol palette.
4. whether or not the symbol should be displayed on the Symbol Palette.

Pressing the **Annotation properties...** button opens the Arc Type Annotation Properties dialog box, see *Arc type annotations* (page 91), allowing high-level properties of any arc annotations to be set.

9.1.12. Arc type annotations

The Arc Type Annotation Properties dialog box is invoked from the **Annotation properties...** button of the Arc Image Properties dialog box. It allows allows properties of arc annotations to be set for a particular type of arc.

Each entry corresponds to an annotation specified for the region, and consists of:

1. its symbol name,
2. a checkbox indicating whether the annotation will always be present on the arc or whether it will be added incrementally by the user as desired, and
3. a text entry area allowing a logical name to be given to the annotation.

9.1.13. Multi-way arcs and junction symbols

Multi-way arcs allow you to connect one node to several others with the same arc type and have the diagram display the result as a single leg emerging from the source node, joining it to a multi-way junction symbol. The destination nodes are then all joined to this junction symbol. This can result in tidier diagrams, particularly if some grid constraints are applied to the arc segments .

A junction symbol is a node symbol which has been specially selected for the role using the Junction Editor dialog box, invoked from the **Junction editor** button of the Arc Type Editor.

This allows you to specify several important properties:

1. selecting the junction symbol -- there is a message at the foot of the dialog box, asking you to select the node symbol that you want from some symbol library. (You do this in the usual way, opening the Symbol Librarian if necessary from the Arc Type Editor or the Control Window's **Tools** menu.) Once the symbol is selected, you will see the *cross-hairs* cursor pattern when you move into the preview window of the Arc Type Editor. Clicking here will "drop" the selected symbol onto the preview window and the label *Junction symbol* followed by the name of the symbol will be shown below it.
2. changing the junction symbol -- press the **Clear Junction** button, and the current junction symbol image displayed in the Arc Type Editor preview window is cleared.
3. size -- you can specify the height and width of the displayed symbol, in pixels.
4. two-way arcs -- you can decide whether or not the junction symbol should appear when the source node is connected to a single destination node.
5. grid geometry -- if *auto dog-leg* is set, an extra control point will be added to each leg connecting the junction symbol to the destination nodes. Hardy will then alter these arcs so that they are horizontally and vertically aligned. (as though **Layout: Straighten lines** had been selected.)
6. specifying attachment points -- this uses the numbered identifiers of the junction symbol's attachment points to specify finer detail for tidier diagrams:

   Input: the attachment point id used for connecting the input (source) node,
   One output: the attachment point id used for connecting the output node when there is only one (a two-way arc),
   Two outputs (1): the attachment point id to be used for connecting the first of more than one output arcs (a multi-way arc),
   Two outputs (2): the attachment point id to be used for connecting the second of

more than one output arcs,

Three outputs: the attachment point id to be used for connecting the third and subsequent output arcs.

Pressing the **OK** button accepts the current values and dismisses the dialog box.

9.2. Hypertext card types

As for diagrams, it is possible to create *hypertext card types* which modify the default capabilities of the standard hypertext card. Differences between one type and another all relate to alternative styles for *marking-up* text blocks and the use of custom menus.The text is marked-up by selecting blocks of text---phrases, sentences, paragraphs, etc---and associating *block types* with them. Each block type is mapped onto a particular *style* which allows the block to be distinguished from the surrounding text in terms of its font, colour, etc. To understand the process of building a new card type, please read the chapter on creating a new diagram type first (*Creating new diagrams* (page 52)).

9.2.1. New hypertext types

The Hardy Hypertext Type Manager, accessed from the **Tools: Show hypertext type manager** menu item of the Hardy Control Window, allows the default capabilities of the standard hypertext card to be modified so that the user can create different hypertext card types.

The Hypertext Type Manager presents you with a list of currently defined hypertext types and a selection of buttons, many of which are identical to those of the Diagram Type Manager (see *New diagram types* (page 82)).

To create a new type, press the **New** button, and enter a name for the hypertext type. To alter the name of an existing type, select the one you want from the *Hypertext types* list and press the **Edit name** button and you'll be asked for the new name. You can also change its category (see *New diagram types* (page 82)) if you want to, though this isn't necessary. You can delete a type by selecting the entry you want to remove from the list, then pressing the **Delete** button.

The actual work of defining the hypertext type is done through altering hypertext block mappings.You open the Block Mappings dialog box by pressing the **Edit block mappings** button (see *Hypertext block mappings* (page 93)).

The buttons are arranged in two groups, one group providing general facilities, the other dealing with facilities for the type currently selected in the *Hypertext types* list box.

9.2.1.1. General

1. **OK** -- the Hypertext Type Manager is dismissed and, if changes have been made to any hypertext type definitions and these have not been saved, the user is asked whether these should be saved or not.
2. **Load type** -- the File Selector dialog box appears with the filter string set to `*.def`. The user can select the hypertext type definition file to open, and this is then loaded and displayed in the *Hypertext types* list box.
3. **Save type** -- the File Selector dialog box appears, and the user can specify a file name for saving the hypertext type definition file.
4. **Load list** -- the File Selector dialog box appears to allow the user to specify the name of the hypertext definition list file. By default, this is `diagrams.def`.
5. **Save list** -- the File Selector dialog box appears with the filter initialised to `*.def` to

allow a name for the definition file to be selected.

6. **Custom menu** -- if a hypertext type is currently selected in the *Hypertext types* list box, a dialog box appears, allowing the user to specify for that hypertext type the title of a custom menu, and to add or delete menu items from this custom menu. See *Custom menus* (page 94).
7. **Help** -- for X versions of Hardy, the wxHelp program is started and the Hardy manual is loaded and opened at the section concerning the Hypertext Type Manager. For Hardy for Windows, the Windows Help system is started at the appropriate place in Hardy's manual.

9.2.1.2. Hypertext types

1. **New** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears, allowing the user to type in the name of a new hypertext type. An entry with that name then appears in the *Hypertext types* scrolling list, and the newly created hypertext type is selected.
2. **Edit name** -- a Text Entry dialog box appears, allowing the user to change the name of the selected hypertext type. An entry of that name then appears in the *Hypertext types* scrolling list, replacing the previous entry.
3. **Edit block mappings** -- if a hypertext type is selected in the *Hypertext types* scrolling list, a Block Mapping dialog box appears (see *Hypertext block mappings* (page 93) below), allowing the user to alter the mappings between block types and their displayed styles.
4. **Delete** -- the selected hypertext type is deleted from the hypertext type definition list and the corresponding entry is removed from the *Hypertext types* list box.

9.2.2. Hypertext block mappings

The block type mapping defines how the type identifier of a text block is interpreted in terms of text colour and style. Using different block type mappings on the same hypertext files results in the same text being displayed differently. When a hypertext type is first created, the default block styles are given. You may wish to modify these for your own application. Note that the block type identifier must be unique for each block type mapping.

A block type can have the following characteristics:

font family (Swiss, Roman, Modern or Default),

point size (such as 10, 12, 24),

style (Normal, Italic or Default),

weight (Normal, Bold, Light or Default),

colour (such as BLACK, RED, FOREST GREEN, BLUE, CYAN or Default).

A block may, in fact, have some of the attributes specified as *Default*, which means "use whatever was specified before this block". The point size value representing the default is -1. When a block ends, the attributes revert to their previous values. This means that a block need only change one or two attributes, such as colour or weight. Blocks may be nested: for example, within an Italic block, a word could be highlighted in RED. If the RED block type specified "Default" for text style, the block would be RED *and* Italic.

An additional characteristic is whether or not it supports *sections*. If sections are supported by a particular hypertext type, cards of this type will be able to move backwards and forwards using the **Goto: Top**, **Goto: Next section**, and **Goto: Previous section**menu options.

The Block Mapping dialog box allows the user to alter the mappings between hypertext block types and their displayed styles. It is invoked from the **Edit block mappings** button of the Hypertext Type Manager, see *Hypertext type manager* (page 92).

The names of the different block styles are listed in the *Blocks* area. The type id corresponding to the currently selected block is shown in the *Block type* area. Details of the text font and other characteristics are shown and may be altered in the other areas.

To add a new block type name, press the **Add** button. A Text Entry dialog box will appear, allowing you to type in the name required. An entry with that name will appear in the *Blocks* list and that entry will be selected. You can alter the name of a type by selecting it in the *Blocks* list, then pressing the **Change name** button. The Text Entry dialog box will appear, allowing you to edit the selected name. The new name will replace the old name in the existing entry in the list. To delete a type, select the one you want to remove from the *Blocks* list, press **Delete**, and the entry will disappear from the list.

9.3. Custom menus

Diagram types and hypertext types may have a extra menu added to the card's menu bar. This supports an interface to foreign code which intercepts particular mouse and menu events for the card type. You specify your menu requirements using the Custom Menu dialog box which is invoked by pressing the **Custom menu** button of either the Diagram Type Manager or the Hypertext Type Manager. This lets you specify the menu name and add or delete menu entries.

The menu title is specified in the area labelled *Menu title* and the selectable names of the menu entries are shown in the *Menu items* list. To add a new entry, type its name into the *Menu item name* area and press the **Add** button. What you typed will now be added to the end of the *Menu items* list and *Menu item name* will be cleared. To change the name of an entry, select the name you want to change in the *Menu items* list, type the new name into *Menu item name*, and press the **Save name** button. What you typed will now replace the selected entry in the list. To remove an entry, select the name you want removed from the *Menu items* list and press the **Delete** button. The selected entry will be removed from the list.

Pressing **OK** commits to the current settings and dismisses the dialog box.

9.4. Saving card type definitions

Once you have finished defining or changing a card type, go to the type manager (the Diagram Type Manager or the Hypertext Type Manager as appropriate) and press the **Save type** button to save the currently selected type. You will be prompted for file names if any files are needed that you haven't referred to before.

To update the definitions list file, use the **Save list** button of the type manager.

9.5. Editing previously created card type definitions

Assuming the type definition is available from the type manager (the Diagram Type Manager or the Hypertext Type Manager as appropriate), select it in the *Diagram types* list (by clicking on its name), then press the **Edit name** button to change its name, or the **Delete** button to delete the whole type completely from the type index. (The file will remain on the disk.)

To edit an existing node or arc typein the Diagram Type Manager, make selections in the same way as above, but using the *Node types* or *Arc types* lists instead.

NOTE that it can be dangerous to change diagram type settings when a diagram of that type is being edited, and it is possible to get Hardy to crash this way. For many settings, however, old diagram files will continue to work correctly using the new definitions. However, this should be done with caution.

The **Layout: Apply definitions** menu option of a diagram card does let you update a displayed card if you have, in the meantime, changed its Diagram Type definition; existing values of various properties of the displayed items will be updated where possible.

10. Differences between the X and Windows versions

Since the X and Windows windowing systems have differences in philosophy and design, some specific features are necessary for each platform. These have been kept to a minimum to avoid inconsistency.

10.1. Printing

Under X, the only form of printing is to PostScript files or printers. Hardy for Windows provides the same options, but will also support copying diagrams to the Windows clipboard though the **Edit: Copy** option.

10.2. The clipboard

Hardy for Windows has an option in the diagram card **Edit: Copy** menu for copying a metafile version of the diagram to the clipboard. See *Clipboard* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

10.3. MDI mode

Under Windows, MDI (Multiple Document Interface) is a style used by most modern applications where child windows are constrained by the top level window. For applications which allow many documents to be open at once, it is more convenient to hide all windows when the top level window is iconised than to have to close many windows individually. The application effectively has its own desktop, on which document windows may be placed and iconised. The menu bar for each window is always placed on the top level window, and changes according to which child window is currently activated.

In addition, MDI applications have an extra menu called **Window**, with standard **Cascade**, **Tile Arrange icons** and **Next** options, and a list of MDI child windows which can be activated.

Hardy supports MDI mode under Windows (in fact it's the default) using the `-mdi` command line switch. The switch `-sdi` selects SDI (Single Document Interface) mode, for those who dislike the MDI style. Hardy is probably unique amongst Windows applications to offer this choice! In MDI, the hypertext tree browser is displayed in a separate child window; this is now synonymous with the control window, taking on the top level window menu bar (main menu). You can get to the main menu by activating the browser window or using the **Goto control window** menu item from a card's **File** menu.

10.4. Text editing

Plain text cards cannot be edited directly under Windows. A separate text editor must be invoked, and the file read back into the card explicitly.

11. Programming Hardy

Hardy has a built-in language based on NASA's CLIPS 6.0. For detailed information on CLIPS, please refer to the CLIPS user and reference manuals. This chapter describes the simple CLIPS development environment included with Hardy, and lists the Hardy-specific CLIPS functions; the function reference may be viewed on-line from the CLIPS help menu by selecting.

After the Hardy specific functions, a separate section lists CLIPS functions relevant to lower-level construction and manipulation of windows and other interface components. This reference is also accessible from the CLIPS help menu as *Interface functions reference*.

11.1. The Hardy CLIPS environment

Hardy comes with a cut-down version of the embeddable expert system shell, CLIPS. There are new Hardy-specific functions which may be called from CLIPS, allowing Hardy to be tailored to a greater degree than by using the diagram type manager alone.

The **Tools** menu on the control window has a **Show Development window** option. Selecting this displays the Hardy CLIPS development window consisting of a menu bar, a command prompt, and a text output window. Some CLIPS operations may be achieved using the menu such as loading a CLIPS definition file, and all may be accessed from the command prompt. To execute an arbitrary CLIPS command, type in the command and press the **Do** button. The command is echoed on the text output window, and any results of the executed command are also displayed.

The end user will normally not use the Hardy CLIPS window. When your CLIPS code has been debugged, it can be loaded at runtime using the **-clips *filename*** command line option. Any function calls in the file will also be executed (for example to register Hardy event handlers, or load further definitions).

To load functions, you may use the **File: Batch** or **File: Load** menu options. The Load option checks constructs such as functions, printing out error messages; however, *only* construct definitions are allowed, so functions cannot be executed from a file. The Batch option allows both construct definitions and the use of these constructs (e.g. to register interest in a Hardy event); however, construct error messages are not given. The **-clips** command line switch uses the batch method.

It is strongly recommended that you use at least two CLIPS files: a small loader and one or more constructs file. The loader loads the main file or files, and then calls the appropriate event handler registration functions.

For example:

```
(load "constructs.clp")
(register-event-handler NodeLeftClick "KADS Inference" node-left-click)
```

This is very much quicker than having all the code in the top-level batch file.

Also, you may wish to execute the command `(unwatch all)`, or put it early on in your program. This cuts down on the amount of information CLIPS displays on the window, which can be time consuming.

11.2. Debugging CLIPS code

At present, there are few facilities for debugging CLIPS code. For trying out small code fragments, you can type in one command at a time in the text input panel. Once one or more functions have been written, print statements at important points in the code are probably the best way to proceed. A single-stepping facility may be incorporated in later versions of Hardy. This might be emulated for now by placing dummy **read-string** statements in the code to prevent the code proceeding until the user allows it.

Also, typing `(watch all)` makes CLIPS show a trace of function calls and execution of other CLIPS constructs. The `(dribble-on file)` command writes CLIPS error messages and other output that would normally be written to the development window, into a file. `(dribble-off)` flushes and closes the dribble file.

Type errors in early versions of Hardy tended to be fatal, since Hardy could not check that an identifier referred to an existing object of a different type (such as a node object instead of a node image). Type checking is now performed on all objects, so such mistakes should be more readily identifiable.

A common error is forgetting a closing bracket. This may not cause any error message when a file is loaded into CLIPS, but the definitions or function calls after the error will not be made, and so code will not appear to be working. It may be convenient to put a print statement at the end of a file you are debugging: if all is well, a message will be printed; otherwise, there may be a problem with brackets.

Another thing to watch out for is non-reentrant loops. All the CLIPS for Hardy functions whose names contain **get-first-** cannot be used within a loop which already makes use of this function. To get around this, first build a list of identifiers using the **get-first-** and **get-next-**functions and the CLIPS **mv-append** function, and iterate through this list instead. For example,

```
(bind ?id (diagram-card-get-first-node ?card))
(bind ?list (mv-append))
(while (> ?id -1) do
  (bind ?list (mv-append ?list ?id))
  (bind ?id (diagram-card-get-next-node))
)
; The following loop can now call other functions which use
; get-first-card-node
(bind ?counter 1)
(while (> ?counter (length ?list)) do
  (bind ?element (nth ?counter ?list))
  ...
  (bind ?counter (+ ?counter 1))
)
```

11.3. Diagram and hypertext structures

The specialized Hardy CLIPS functions manipulate various structures essential to Hardy, which must be understood before any code can be written.

Most accessible structures are referred to in CLIPS code by integer identifiers, except for named node, arc and other *types* (as opposed to instances of structures of that type) which are referred to by name. For example, a node image of type "Knowledge Role" may have identifer 187.

A Hardy diagram card has an integer identifier, retrievable via the arguments of an event handler function or by other means. There are two sorts of diagram card: *top-level*, and *expansion*. The top-level card is the one first created, and has menu options for file saving and loading. For simple diagrams, this type may be all that is required. An expansion card is a diagram card which 'hangs off' the top-level diagram card or another expansion card, and may be used to build up a hierarchical diagram. Only one file is used to save a hierarchy of diagrams. Most operations may be done on diagram cards without worrying whether it is an expansion or the top-level diagram card.

A Hardy diagram consists of an underlying network of *nodes* and *arcs* (referred to generically as *objects*). They are visually represented by node and arc *images*. The distinction is necessary to accommodate multiple images for one object (for example, the same node appearing on different cards). Usually, there will be only one image for each node or arc. At present there are no functions to allow creating additional images for existing objects. When an image is created, an underlying object is automatically created, the id of which can be retrieved from the image if required. Objects are associated with the top-level card, whereas images are associated with the card on which they are displayed.

Node and arc objects have string *attributes*, some of which are hard-wired (such as "type") and some of which are defined by the user in the diagram type manager. One or more of the user-definable attributes may be used in the image label, determined by a user-supplied format string. The user-definable attributes may be set and retrieved via CLIPS or by the user.

The hypertext structure is based on the concept of the hypertext *item*. Each type of card has its own idea of what corresponds to an item --- for the diagram card, each image is conceptually an item and therefore contains an item structure. Items may be linked to other items by hypertext *links* (or *hyperlinks*). A card always has at least one item, called the *special item*, so that a card which either does not support the concept of items (e.g. the text card), or has no appropriate items, may still be linked to another card or item.

Using the appropriate functions, items may be retrieved from images, and any links attached to the items may be traversed, to access other connected items, cards or images. For convenience, there are functions to manipulate expansion cards (which are cards linked to image items via special links) without needing to access the items and traverse the links explicitly.

For further information and some simple examples, please refer the Hardy Software Development Kit and the accompanying Frequently Asked Questions document.

12. Hardy Functions Reference

This section specifies the functions that provide the functionality of Hardy at a card and item level. Display functionality is specified in *Interface functions reference* (page 235).

This section is presented in five parts based on the card index and the different available card types, with miscellaneous functionality being gathered together at the end.

In the definitions below, function names and parameter names are shown in bold face, with types being shown in italics. The types used are as follows:

1. *double* is a double-precision floating point number.
2. *long* is a long integer.
3. *string* is a double-quoted ASCII string.
4. *word* is an unquoted string.

Functions involving diagram images, objects and hypertext items will use the diagram card identifier, an integer, to ensure uniqueness.

Parameters can be *optional*, in which case the defaults are specified.

Function names are constructed by appending an 'action' to an 'object', for instance **card-get-string-attribute** and **diagram-image-get-width**.

There is an implicit type hierarchy which allows some functions to be general purpose, so **card-get-special-item** can refer to all card types, whereas **diagram-card-find-root** operates on diagram cards only. Similarly, a **diagram-object** can be used for **node-objects** and **arc-objects**, and **diagram-image** can be used for **node-images** and **arc-images**.

Note: In Windows NT or WIN32s versions of Hardy, integer identifiers can be negative. So when validating integer identifiers, test for values of zero or -1, rather than for values less than zero.

12.1. Card index functions

hardy-clear-index

long (**hardy-clear-index**)

Clears the hypertext index, with no user confirmation. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

hardy-get-first-card

long (**hardy-get-first-card**)

Gets the first card in the index. Returns -1 if there are no cards, or a card id otherwise. Use **hardy-get-next-card** for retrieving further cards.

hardy-get-next-card

long (**hardy-get-next-card**)

Gets the next card in the index. Returns -1 if there are no more cards, or a card id otherwise. Use

hardy-get-first-card to start iterating through cards.

Note that if you perform an operation that deletes a card during an iteration through the index, this function could give an error. A possible solution is to put all card ids in a list, iterate through this list, and use **card-is-valid** to check if the card still exists.

hardy-get-top-card

long (**hardy-get-top-card**)

Returns the id of the top card, or -1 if none.

hardy-load-index

long (**hardy-load-index** *string* **file**)

Loads the hypertext index from the specified file, returning 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

hardy-save-index

long (**hardy-save-index** *string* **file**)

Saves the hypertext index in the specified file, returning 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

12.2. Card functions

The following functions apply to any card.

card-create

long (**card-create** *long* **parent_id**, *string* **card_type**, *optional long* **iconic = 0**, *optional long* **x = -1**, *optional long* **y = -1**, *optional long* **width = -1**, *optional long* **height = -1**, *optional long* **window = 0**)

Creates a new card and returns the id, or -1 if the call failed. *parent_id* may be zero (no parent) or a valid parent card id. *card_type* should be a string: the only valid value at present is "Text card" (diagram cards are created using **diagram-card-create**).

If *iconic* is 1, the card will be created in iconic (minimized) form.

The position and size arguments are optional; if they are omitted or take the value -1, their values will be given defaults.

window may contain the identifier of the frame to display the card in. If *window* is present and non-zero, the card is not already displayed in a window, and the card that is already displayed in *window* is of the same type, then the card will be displayed in this window.

card-delete

long (**card-delete** *long* **card_id**, *optional long* **warn = 1**)

Deletes the given card; returns 1 for success and 0 for failure.

If *warn* is 1 (the default), the user will be asked for confirmation before deleting, otherwise the card will be deleted silently.

card-deselect-all

long (**card-deselect-all** *long* **card_id**)

Deselects all images on the given card; returns 1 for success and 0 for failure.

card-find-by-title

long (**card-find-by-title** *string* **name**, *optional long* **substring=1**)

Finds card for first matching title.*name* may be a substring (if *substring* is 1). This function is useful for testing against cards which have been created manually and whose id is, therefore, not known.

card-get-canvas

long (**card-get-canvas** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the id for the canvas of a card, if the card currently has a physical window. The canvas is the main subwindow of a card, such as the diagram editing canvas of a diagram card.

card-get-frame

long (**card-get-frame** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the frame identifier associated with the card, returning 0 if there is no frame. This allows, for example, a card frame to be used as a parent for a dialog box.

card-get-first-item

long (**card-get-first-item** *long* **card_id**)

Gets the first hypertext item associated with the given card. Returns -1 for end of list. Further items are returned by calls of **card-get-next-item**.

card-get-height

long (**card-get-height** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the height of the card's window.

card-get-next-item

long (**card-get-next-item**)

Following a call of **card-get-first-item**which returns the first hypertext item associated with a specified card, this gets the next hypertext item for that card. Returns -1 for end of list.

card-get-special-item

long (**card-get-special-item** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the "special" hypertext item for the given card. The "special" item always exists, even for empty cards, for the purpose of linking one card to another.

card-get-string-attribute

string (**card-get-string-attribute** *long* **card_id**, *string* **attribute_name**)

Get the value of the given string attribute associated with the card. *attribute_name* may be one of:

1. diagram-type: for diagram or expansion cards only, returns user-defined diagram type;
2. filename;
3. print-file (diagram or expansion cards only);
4. title;
5. type: returns "Text card", "Diagram card", "Hypertext card" or "Diagram expansion".

card-get-toolbar

long (**card-get-toolbar** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the toolbar id for the card, if the card currently has a physical window and if there is a toolbar associated with the card. Returns 0 otherwise.

Note that you should only perform window or toolbar operations on this id if it has been created by a wxCLIPS operation (i.e., is not a Hardy-created toolbar).

card-get-width

long (**card-get-width** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the width of the card's window.

card-get-x

long (**card-get-x** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the *x* coordinate of the top left corner of the card's window.

card-get-y

long (**card-get-y** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the *y* coordinate of the top left corner of the card's window.

card-iconize

long (**card-iconize** *long* **card_id**, *optional long* **iconic = 1**)

Iconizes or restores the given card, if it has a physical window associated with it. If *iconic* is 1, the card will be iconized. If 0, it will be restored.

card-is-modified

long (**card-is-modified** *long* **card_id**)

Returns 1 if the given card has been modified and needs to be saved, 0 otherwise.

card-is-shown

long (**card-is-shown** *long* **card_id**)

Returns 1 if the given card is displayed on the screen (i.e. has a physical window associated with it), 0 otherwise. See also **card-show**.

card-is-valid

long (**card-is-valid** *long* **card_id**)

Returns 1 if the card exists, 0 otherwise.

card-move

long (**card-move** *long* **card_id**, *long* **x**, *long* **y**)

Moves the given card to the specified position on the screen. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

card-quit

long (**card-quit** *long* **card_id**, **optional long***quit_level=0*)

Quits the given card, i.e. deletes the physical window associated with the card, but does not delete the card from the hypertext index. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

Action depends on value of quit_level:

0: full user prompting,

1: if the card has a filename, save and quit without prompting,
2: don't save anything and quit without prompting.

card-select-all

long (**card-select-all** *long* **card_id**)

Selects all images on the given card. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

card-send-command

long (**card-send-command** *long* **card_id**, *long* **command_id**)

Sends a menu command identifier to the card, which must be displayed. *command_id* is an internal identifier that can be obtained from an equivalent string form using *hardy-command-int-to-string* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

This function can be used in custom code to provide features that the default user interface normally provides.

See *Menu command identifiers* (page 158) for a list of identifiers you can use in conjunction with this function.

card-set-icon

long (**card-set-icon** *long* **card_id**, *long* **icon_id**)

Sets the icon for a card, where *icon_id* is a valid icon created with a wxCLIPS function.

card-set-modified

long (**card-set-modified** *long* **card_id**, *optional long* **modified = 1**)

Sets the card 'modified' flag, to 1 by default.

card-set-status-text

long (**card-set-status-text** *long* **card_id**, *string* **text**)

Sets the status line of the given card to display the given text (only if the card has a status line---all diagram cards do, text cards currently do not). Use the empty string ("") to clear the status line. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

card-set-string-attribute

long (**card-set-string-attribute** *long* **card_id**, *string* **attribute**, *string* **value**)

Sets the attribute of the given card to the given value. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

The **attribute** parameter may be one of the following:

1. filename,
2. print-file (diagram card only),
3. title.

card-show

long (**card-show** *long* **card_id**, *optional long* **iconic = 0**, *optional long* **window=0**)

Shows the given card. If the card is being displayed, it is brought to the fore. If it is not being displayed, it is given a new physical window, its contents loaded, and it is brought to the fore (or iconised if there is a second argument which is non-zero).

window may contain the identifier of the frame to display the card in. If *window* is present and non-zero, the card is not already displayed in a window, and the card that is already displayed in *window* is of the same type, then the card will be displayed in this window.

12.3. Item functions

The following functions apply to hypertext items.

item-get-first-link

long (**item-get-first-link** *long* **card_id**, *long* **item_id**)

Gets the first link associated with the item. Returns -1 for end of list. Further links are returned by calls of **item-get-next-link**.

item-get-kind

string (**item-get-kind** *long* **card_id**, *long* **item_id**)

Gets the kind of the item. The 'kind' is a way of labelling an item without deriving a new C++ class, and is currently unused.

item-get-next-link

long (**item-get-next-link**)

Following a call of **item-get-first-link** which returns the first link associated with a specified item, this gets the next link for that item. Returns -1 for end of list.

item-get-type

string (**item-get-type** *long* **card_id**, *long* **item_id**)

Gets the type of the item. A type refers to the item's C++ class, and may currently be "Default item" or "Diagram item".

item-goto

long (**item-goto** *long* **card_id**, *long* **item_id**, *optional long* **iconic = 0**)

Highlight the item on the given card, optionally iconising the card if a new physical window needs to be created for the card. *item_id* can be -1 to use the special item.

Returns the id of the top card, or -1 if none.

item-set-kind

long (**item-set-kind** *long* **card_id**, *long* **item_id**, *string* **kind**)

Sets the *kind* of the item. This string value is not used by Hardy but might be used by an application for some purpose.

12.4. Link functions

The following functions apply to hyperlinks.

link-get-card-from

long (**link-get-card-from** *long* **link_id**)

Returns the card owning the item pointed from by the link, or -1 if unsuccessful.

link-get-card-to

long (**link-get-card-to** *long* **link_id**)

Returns the card owning the item pointed to by the link, or -1 if unsuccessful.

link-get-item-from

long (**link-get-item-from** *long* **link_id**)

Returns the item pointed *from* by the link, or -1 if unsuccessful.

link-get-item-to

long (**link-get-item-to** *long* **link_id**)

Returns the item pointed *to* by the link, or -1 if unsuccessful.

link-get-kind

string (**link-get-kind** *long* **link_id**)

Gets the kind of the link. The 'kind' is a way of labelling a link without deriving a new C++ class, and may currently be "Expansion", for an expansion link, or the empty string.

link-get-type

string (**link-get-type** *long* **link_id**)

Gets the type of the link. A type refers to the link's C++ class, and may currently be one of "Default link" and "Expansion link".

link-cards

long (**link-cards** *long* **from_card**, *long* **to_card**)

Creates a default hyperlink between the two cards, returning the link id if successful or -1 if unsuccessful.

link-items

long (**link-items** *long* **from_card**, *long* **from_item**,*long* **to_card**, *long* **to_item**)

Creates a hyperlink between the two items, returning the link id if successful or -1 if unsuccessful.

link-set-kind

long (**link-set-kind** *long* **link_id**, *string* **kind**)

Sets the *kind* of the link. This string value is not used by Hardy but might be used by an application for some purpose (such as providing 'typed' links).

12.5. Arc image functions

The following functions apply to arc images.

arc-image-change-attachment

long (**arc-image-change-attachment** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**,*long* **end**, *long* **attachment**, *long* **position=-1**)

This function allows the programmer to change the attachment point at which the arc enters or leaves the node. Attachment points start from zero and are either hard-wired or defined in the symbol editor. For example, rectangles, circles and ellipses have four attachment points, starting from the top and going clockwise from zero to three.

If the final *position* argument is given (and more than -1), the function can change the position of the arc relative to the arcs connected at the same attachment point. If zero, the arc will be drawn at the first position. If a very large number, it will be drawn at the last position.

Note that these attachment points are only valid if the node image has attachments switched on (from the symbol editor or node type editor).

If *end* is 1, the 'to' end of the arc is acted on. If *end* is 0, the 'from' end is acted on.

attachment should be a valid attachment point. After the function is called, the arc will be redrawn at the given attachment point.

position, if supplied, specifies the position of the arc relative to other arcs connected to the node at this attachment point.

arc-image-control-point-add

long (**arc-image-control-point-add** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Adds a control point to the arc image (between the middle two points). If the arc image is selected, the application must deselect it before calling this function (and select it again if necessary).

arc-image-control-point-count

long (**arc-image-control-point-count** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Counts the number of control points in the arc image. This number will be at least two (one for each end).

arc-image-control-point-move

long (**arc-image-control-point-move** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **point_id**,*double* **x**, *double* **y**)

Moves the given control point to an absolute position on the canvas. If the arc image is selected, the application must deselect it before calling this function (and select it again if necessary). The application must redraw the arc image after this function is called.

The point id must be between 1 and the number of control points in the line. The coordinate system has an origin at the top left of the canvas.

arc-image-control-point-remove

long (**arc-image-control-point-remove** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Removes an abitrary control point from the arc image. If the arc image is selected, the application must deselect it before calling this function (and select it again if necessary).

arc-image-control-point-x

double (**arc-image-control-point-x** *double* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **point_id**)

Gets the X position of the control point.

The point id must be between 1 and the number of control points in the line. The coordinate system has an origin at the top left of the canvas.

arc-image-control-point-y

double (**arc-image-control-point-y** *double* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **point_id**)

Gets the Y position of the control point.

The point id must be between 1 and the number of control points in the line. The coordinate system has an origin at the top left of the canvas.

arc-image-create

long (**arc-image-create** *long* **card_id**, *string* **arc_type**,*long* **from_node**, *long* **to_node**,*optional long* **from_attachment**, *optional long* **to_attachment**, *optional string* **alternative_image**)

Creates a new arc and arc image between the given node images. The new arc is stored at the root of the diagram hierarchy; the arc image is associated with the displaying card and its id is returned if the operation is successful. The *arc_type* parameter must be a valid arc type for this diagram type, as defined interactively using the Diagram Type Manager. The optional attachment points refer to where the arc should be attached at the node image end-points; usually the attachment option will not have been activated in the diagram type manager so these will have no effect.

The optional parameter *alternative_image* can specify an alternative image name if the arc definition has more than one image definition defined.

Returns -1 if unsuccessful.

Unlike with **node-image-create**, the arc image is drawn immediately and no further operation is required to make it visible.

arc-image-get-alignment-type

string (**arc-image-get-alignment-type** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**,*long* **end**)

Gets the alignment type for a particular end of the line.

end should be 1 for the arc image end, 0 for the arc image start.

The returned type will be ALIGN_TO_NEXT_HANDLE or ALIGN_NONE.

See also *arc-image-set-alignment-type* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

arc-image-get-attachment-from

long (**arc-image-get-attachment-from** *long* **card_id**, *long* **arc_image_id**)

Given a diagram card id and the id of an arc image on that card, retrieves the attachment point of the node image at the 'from' end of the arc. Returns -1 on failure.

The value of the attachment point depends on the type of node, whether attachment mode is on for this node, and where the arc has been drawn from. By default, the value is zero, which if attachment mode is off means that the arc is drawn from the centre of the node. For a rectangle, circle or ellipse, there are four attachment points numbered zero to three clockwise, at the main points of the compass. A polyline's attachment points are at its vertices.

arc-image-get-attachment-to

long (**arc-image-get-attachment-to** *long* **card_id**, *long* **arc_image_id**)

Given a diagram card id and the id of an arc image on that card, retrieves the attachment point of the node image at the 'to' end of the arc. Returns -1 on failure.

The value of the attachment point depends on the type of node, whether attachment mode is on for this node, and where the arc has been drawn to. By default, the value is zero, which if attachment mode is off means that the arc is drawn from the centre of the node. For a rectangle, circle or ellipse, there are four attachment points numbered zero to three clockwise, at the main points of the compass. A polyline's attachment points are at its vertices.

arc-image-get-image-from

long (**arc-image-get-image-from** *long* **card_id**, *long* **arc_image_id**)

Given a diagram card id and the id of an arc image on that card, retrieves the id of the node image at the 'from' end of the arc. Returns -1 on failure.

arc-image-get-image-to

long (**arc-image-get-image-to** *long* **card_id**, *long* **arc_image_id**)

Given a diagram card id and the id of an arc image on that card, retrieves the id of the node image at the 'to' end of the arc. Returns -1 on failure.

arc-image-is-leg

long (**arc-image-is-leg** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns 1 if the arc image is a leg joining a junction image *to* a node image, otherwise 0.

arc-image-is-spline

long (**arc-image-is-spline** *long* **card_id**, *long* **arc_image_id**)

Returns 1 if the image is a spline, or 0 if the image is a line.

arc-image-is-stem

long (**arc-image-is-stem** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns 1 if the arc image is a stem joining a *from* node image to a junction image, otherwise 0.

The junction image can be found from a stem or leg by following the *from* and *to* pointers in the normal way. Similarly, if the junction image is known, the arc images can be determined.

arc-image-set-alignment-type

long (**arc-image-set-alignment-type** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**,*long* **end**, *string* **type**)

Sets the alignment type for a particular end of the line.

end should be 1 for the arc image end, 0 for the arc image start.

type can be ALIGN_TO_NEXT_HANDLE or ALIGN_NONE. If the former, the point at which the arc image hits the node image is calculated by looking at the next handle (control point) along. Depending on the attachment point, the x or y coordinate is set to the same position as the next handle.

This only applies if attachment mode is on, and the attached node image is rectangular. The alignment position is bounded by the size of node image.

See also *arc-image-get-alignment-type* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

arc-image-set-spline

long (**arc-image-set-spline** *long* **card_id**, *long* **arc_image_id**,*long* **is_spline**)

Sets the arc image to be a spline (*is_spline* is 1) or a line (*is-spline* is 0). Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

12.6. Diagram card functions

The following functions apply to diagram cards.

diagram-card-clear-canvas

long (**diagram-card-clear-canvas** *long* **card_id**)

Clears the canvas associated with the given diagram card. This does not delete any images, it merely blanks the canvas: calling **diagram-card-redraw** will bring back the diagram. Use **diagram-card-delete-all-images** to actually destroy all diagram images.

diagram-card-copy

long (**diagram-card-copy** *long* **card_id**)

Copies the selected images of the card *card_id* into the Hardy clipboard buffer (and onto the Windows clipboard if running under Windows), if the cards are of the same diagram type. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

The function **diagram-card-paste** may be used to paste the clipboard buffer contents onto another card. The function **diagram-card-cut** copies and then deletes the selected images.

diagram-card-cut

long (**diagram-card-cut** *long* **card_id**)

Copies the selected images of the card *card_id* into the Hardy clipboard buffer (and onto the Windows clipboard if running under Windows), and then deletes the selected images from the card if the cards are of the same diagram type. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

The function **diagram-card-paste** may be used to paste the clipboard buffer contents onto another card. The function **diagram-card-copy** will copy without deleting the selected images.

diagram-card-create

long (**diagram-card-create** *long* **parent_id**, *string* **diagram_type**, *optional long* **iconic=0**, *optional long* **x = -1**, *optional long* **y = -1**, *optional long* **width = -1**, *optional long* **height = -1**, *optional long* **window=0**)

Creates a new diagram card and returns the id, or -1 if the call failed.*parent_id* may be zero (no parent) or a valid parent card id. *diagram_type* should be a valid diagram type, as defined using the interactive Diagram Type Manager.

If *iconic* is 1, the card will initially be shown in the iconic state.

The position and size arguments are optional; if they are omitted or take the value -1, their values will be given defaults.

window may contain the identifier of the frame to display the card in. If *window* is present and non-zero, the card is not already displayed in a window, and the card that is already displayed in *window* is of the same type, then the card will be displayed in this window.

diagram-card-create-expansion

long (**diagram-card-create-expansion** *long* **parent_id**, *long* **image_id**, **optional long***window=0*)

Creates a new diagram expansion card and returns the id, or -1 if the call failed.*parent_id* must be a valid parent card id. *image_id* should be a valid node or arc image id to be expanded, or -1 to signify the card should be linked to the parent card itself and not an image within it.

window may contain the identifier of the frame to display the card in. If *window* is present and non-zero, the card is not already displayed in a window, and the card that is already displayed in *window* is of the same type, then the card will be displayed in this window.

diagram-card-delete-all-images

long (**diagram-card-delete-all-images** *long* **card_id**)

Attempts to delete all the images on the canvas of the given diagram card. It may fail if images are connected to expansion cards. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-card-find-root

long (**diagram-card-find-root** *long* **card_id**)

Given a diagram card id, finds the id of the diagram card at the base of the diagram hierarchy (not necessarily of the whole hypertext hierarchy). This may or may not be the same as *card_id*. Returns -1 for failure.

For example, if a callback provides a diagram id which is that of an expansion card somewhere in the hierarchy, supplying the id to this function will return the root of the hierarchy (*not* the 'top card', which is something else entirely!).

diagram-card-get-first-arc-image

long (**diagram-card-get-first-arc-image** *long* **card_id** *optional long* **arc_id** *optional long* **selected**)

Given a diagram card id, retrieves the id of the first arc image on the card (or another card on the same hierarchy). Further arc images are accessed by calls to **diagram-card-get-next-arcImage**. Returns -1 on failure.

arc_id may be omitted or zero to all return arc images for this card regardless of arc object; or a valid arc object id to restrict the images to those belonging to the arc object.

If *selected* is 1, the images returned will be those currently selected, in the order in which they were selected. If zero, all arc images will be returned.

diagram-card-get-first-arc-object

long (**diagram-card-get-first-arc-object** *long* **card_id**)

Given a diagram card id, retrieves the id of the first arc (*not* arc image) on the card (or root of this card). Further arcs are accessed by calls to **diagram-card-get-next-arc-object**. Returns -1 on failure.

diagram-card-get-first-descendant

long (**diagram-card-get-first-descendant** *long* **card_id**)

Get the first expansion card (always a diagram card) of a card. Returns -1 if no expansion cards.

Used with **diagram-card-get-next-descendant**, allows iteration on all expansion cards which are descendants from a given root card, without having to follow the hypertext links attached to diagram images.

diagram-card-get-first-node-image

long (**diagram-card-get-first-node-image** *long* **card_id** *optional long* **node_id** *optional long* **selected**)

Given a diagram card id, retrieves the id of the first node image on the card. Further node images are accessed by calls to **diagram-card-get-next-node-image**. Returns -1 on failure.

node_id may be omitted or zero to all return node images for this card regardless of node object; or a valid node object id to restrict the images to those belonging to the node object.

If *selected* is 1, the images returned will be those currently selected, in the order in which they were selected. If zero, all node images will be returned.

diagram-card-get-first-node-object

long (**diagram-card-get-first-node-object** *long* **card_id**)

Given a diagram card id, retrieves the id of the first node (*not* node image) on the card (or root of this card). Further cards are obtained by calling **diagram-card-get-next-node-object**. Returns -1 on failure.

diagram-card-get-grid-spacing

long (**diagram-card-get-grid-spacing** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the current grid spacing for the card; a value of zero means that snap-to-grid is switched off.

diagram-card-get-parent-card

long (**diagram-card-get-parent-card** *long* **card_id**)

If the card is an expansion card, returns the id of the parent diagram card. Otherwise returns -1.

diagram-card-get-parent-image

long (**diagram-card-get-parent-image** *long* **card_id**)

If the card is an expansion card, returns the id of the connected node or arc image on the parent diagram card. Otherwise returns -1.

diagram-card-get-next-arc-image

long (**diagram-card-get-next-arc-image**)

Following a call of **diagram-card-get-first-arc-image** for a specified card, retrieves the id of the next node image on the card. Returns -1 on failure or to signify no more images.

diagram-card-get-next-arc-object

long (**diagram-card-get-next-arc-object**)

Following a call of **diagram-card-get-first-arc-object** for a specified diagram card id, this retrieves the id of the next arc (*not* arc image) on the card (or root of this card). Returns -1 on failure or to signify no more arcs.

diagram-card-get-next-descendant

long (**diagram-card-get-next-descendant**)

Following a call of **diagram-card-get-first-descendant** for a specified node, get the next expansion card for that node Returns -1 if no more expansion cards.

diagram-card-get-next-node-image

long (**diagram-card-get-next-node-image**)

Following a call of **diagram-card-get-first-node-image** for a specified card, retrieves the id of the next node image on the card. Returns -1 on failure or to signify no more images.

diagram-card-get-next-node-object

long (**diagram-card-get-next-node-object**)

Following a call of **diagram-card-get-first-card-nodeObject** for a specified card, retrieves the id of the next node on the card (or root of this card). Returns -1 on failure or to signify no more nodes.

diagram-card-get-print-height

long (**diagram-card-get-print-height** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the height of the diagram card's Postscript image in points. This call must be made *after* a call to **diagram-card-print-hierarchy**, which calculates the print size.

diagram-card-get-print-width

long (**diagram-card-get-print-width** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the width of the diagram card's Postscript image in points. This call must be made *after* a call to **diagram-card-print-hierarchy**, which calculates the print size.

diagram-card-get-scale

double (**diagram-card-get-scale** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the scaling factor for the card.

diagram-card-layout-graph

long (**diagram-card-layout-graph** *long* **card_id**)

Lay out the given diagram using a simple graph layout algorithm. The current layout parameters, set through **diagram-card-set-layout-parameters**, are used.

diagram-card-layout-tree

long (**diagram-card-layout-tree** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **orientation**)

Lay out the given diagram as a tree, using the given image as root. The current layout parameters, set through **diagram-card-set-layout-parameters**, are used.

If *orientation* is 1, the layout is top to bottom, otherwise it is left to right.

diagram-card-load-file

long (**diagram-card-load-file** *long* **card_id**, *string* **filename**)

Loads the given diagram file onto the given card. Returns 1 for success, 0 for failure.

diagram-card-paste

long (**diagram-card-paste** *long* **card_id**)

Copies images from the Hardy clipboard buffer onto the card *card_id*, if the diagram types of buffer and card match. The clipboard buffer should have been filled with **diagram-card-copy** or **diagram-card-cut** prior to this operation. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

The function **diagram-card-copy** will copy without deleting the selected images. The function **diagram-card-cut** copies and then deletes the selected images.

diagram-card-popup-menu

long (**diagram-card-popup-menu** *long* **card_id**, *long* **menu_id**, *double* **x**, *double* **y**)

Popups up a menu previously created using menu-create in wxCLIPS.

diagram-card-print-hierarchy

long (**diagram-card-print-hierarchy** *long* **card_id**)

Prints the diagram card hierarchy to separate PostScript files, prompting for filenames if necessary.

diagram-card-redraw

long (**diagram-card-redraw** *long* **card_id**)

Redraws the entire diagram, returning 1 for success, 0 otherwise.

diagram-card-save-bitmap

long (**diagram-card-save-bitmap** *long* **card_id**, *string* **filename**)

For Windows version only: saves the diagram in a Windows RGB-encoded bitmap (usual extension .BMP). Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-card-save-file

long (**diagram-card-save-file** *long* **card_id**, *string* **file**)

Saves the diagram on the given card in the specified file, returning 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-card-save-metafile

long (**diagram-card-save-metafile** *long* **card_id**, *string* **filename**,*optional double* **scale = 1.0**)

*For Windows version only:*saves the diagram in a Windows metafile (usual extension .wmf). Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

The optional *scale* parameter defaults to 1.0, and is used to reduce or enlarge the metafile.

A metafile is a 'recording' of the graphics functions used to draw a picture. Its chief merits are its scaleability, and its economy of disk space for many types of picture. Metafiles may be included in RTF (Rich Text Format) files to allow programmatic construction of word processor documents containing text and pictures.

diagram-card-set-grid-spacing

long (**diagram-card-set-grid-spacing** *long* **card_id** *long* **grid_spacing**)

Sets the grid spacing for the card; a value of zero switches snap-to-grid off.

diagram-card-set-layout-parameters

long (**diagram-card-set-layout-parameters** *long* **card_id**, *double* **left_margin**, *double* **right_margin**,*double* **width**, *double* **height**, *double* **spacing_x**, *double* **spacing_y**)

Sets layout parameters used by auto-layout functions.

diagram-card-set-scale

long (**diagram-card-set-scale** *long* **card_id**, *float* **scale**)

Sets the scaling factor for the card. 1.0 is 100 per cent. Note that factors above 1 can cause scrolling problems under MS Windows (vertical and horizontal lines get left behind).

12.7. Diagram object functions

The following functions apply to diagram objects (diagram nodes or arcs).

diagram-object-add-attribute

void (**diagram-object-add-attribute** *long* **card_id**, *long* **object_id**,*string* **attribute**)

Adds a new attribute name to the user-defined attributes section of an object (node or arc), and initialises it with the empty string("").

This should *not* be called whilst the user is still editing attributes.

diagram-object-delete-attribute

void (**diagram-object-delete-attribute** *long* **card_id**, *long* **object_id**,*string* **attribute**)

Deletes the named user-defined attribute from an object (node or arc). This does not just delete an attribute value value, it deletes the attribute itself.

This should *not* be called whilst the user is still editing attributes.

diagram-object-format-text

long (**diagram-object-format-text** *long* **card_id**, *long* **object_id**)

Formats the visible text of the node or arc object, for all images associated with this object. The format string specified in the diagram definition is used, and all images redrawn. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-object-get-first-attribute

string (**diagram-object-get-first-attribute** *long* **card_id**, *long* **object_id**)

Get the first attribute name from the object on the given card. Further attribute names are obtained by calling**diagram-object-get-next-attribute**. Returns the empty string if no attribute.

diagram-object-get-first-image

long (**diagram-object-get-first-image** *long* **card_id**, *long* **object_id**)

Given a diagram card id and a node or arc object id, retrieves the id of the first image belonging to the object. (Node and arc objects may have more than one image associated with them.) The card id may be any card in the hierarchy since all nodes and arcs are associated with the top card in the hierarchy. Further image ids are obtained by calling **diagram-object-get-next-image**. Returns -1 on failure.

diagram-object-get-next-attribute

string (**diagram-object-get-next-attribute**)

Following a call of **diagram-object-get-first-attribute** for a specified object, get the next attribute name from the object. Returns the empty string if no further attributes.

diagram-object-get-next-image

long (**diagram-object-get-next-image**)

Following a call of **diagram-object-get-first-image** for a specified object, retrieves the id of the next image belonging to the object. (Node and arc objects may have more than one image associated with them.) Returns -1 on failure or to signify no more images.

diagram-object-get-string-attribute

string (**diagram-object-get-string-attribute** *long* **card_id**, *long* **object_id**, *string* **attribute**)

Given a diagram card id, node or arc object id and string attribute name, returns the value of the attribute if found, the empty string if not found. The only attribute you may rely on is *type*; any others depend on the attributes defined in the particular diagram definition.

diagram-object-set-format-string

long (**diagram-object-set-format-string** *long* **card_id**, *long* **object_id**, *string* **format_string**)

Sets the format string for the object. Normally, the format string for a node or arc type is set in the diagram type manager; this function allows the programmer to dynamically change the format string on a per-object basis. You may wish to show more or less information on an image depending on the context.

If the local format string is the same as the object type format string, it will not be written to file for that object, to save space and time.

diagram-object-set-string-attribute

long (**diagram-object-set-string-attribute** *long* **card_id**, *long* **object_id**, *string* **attribute**, *string* **value**)

Sets the object (node or arc) attribute to the given value.*attribute* may be one of the attributes named in the node or arc type definition. Do *not* try to set an image attribute directly; you may obtain the object for an image using**diagram-image-get-object**.

Returns 1 for success, 0 for failure.

12.8. Diagram palette functions

The following functions apply to a diagram palette.

diagram-palette-get-arc-selection

string (**diagram-palette-get-arc-selection** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the type of the arc symbol selected on the diagram card palette, or the empty string if no arc symbol was selected or the palette was not displayed.

diagram-palette-get-arc-selection-image

string (**diagram-palette-get-arc-selection-image** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the image definition type of the arc symbol selected on the diagram card palette, or the empty string if no arc symbol was selected or the palette was not displayed.

For each arc type, there are one or more arc image definitions: usually there is only one, with the name 'Default''. If there are several arc image definitions for an arc type, each will be displayed on the palette, and this function will distinguish between them.

diagram-palette-get-first-annotation-selection

string (**diagram-palette-get-first-annotation-selection** *long* **card_id**, *string* **type**)

Gets the first selected annotation symbol on the diagram palette.*type* may be one of "Both", "Node" or "Arc", to get different kinds of annotation selection. The function returns the first annotation name or the empty string.

diagram-palette-get-next-annotation-selection generates any further ones, as several annotation images may be selected at once.

diagram-palette-get-next-annotation-selection

string (**diagram-palette-get-next-annotation-selection** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the name of the next selected annotation symbol for the diagram type from the palette, following a call of**diagram-palette-get-next-annotation-selection**, or the empty string.

diagram-palette-get-node-selection

string (**diagram-palette-get-node-selection** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the type of the node symbol selected on the diagram card palette, or the empty string if no node symbol was selected or the palette was not displayed.

diagram-palette-show

long (**diagram-palette-show** *long* **card_id** *long* **show=1**)

If the card is currently visible, shows or hides the palette.

diagram-palette-set-annotation-selection

long (**diagram-palette-set-annotation-selection** *long* **card_id**, *string* **annotation_name**, *long* **select**)

Toggles the named annotation symbol on the diagram palette on or off, depending on the value of *select*: 1 for on, 0 for off. Returns 1 if the function succeeds, 0 otherwise.

diagram-palette-set-arc-selection

long (**diagram-palette-set-arc-selection** *long* **card_id**, *string* **type_name**, *string* **image_def**, *long* **flag**)

Toggles the given arc symbol on the diagram palette on or off, depending on the value of *select*: 1 for on, 0 for off. Returns 1 if the function succeeds, 0 otherwise.

type_name is the arc type name, and *image_def* is the image definition for the arc. Normally *image_def* would be "Default" since most arc definitions only have one image definition.

diagram-palette-set-node-selection

long (**diagram-palette-set-node-selection** *long* **card_id**, *string* **type_name**, *long* **select**)

Toggles the given node symbol on the diagram palette on or off, depending on the value of *select*: 1 for on, 0 for off. Returns 1 if the function succeeds, 0 otherwise.

12.9. Diagram image functions

The following functions apply to a diagram image (a node or arc image).

diagram-image-add-annotation

long (**diagram-image-add-annotation** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *string* **annotation_name**, *string* **dropsite_name**)

Adds an annotation to the given node or arc image, returning an id if successful or -1 if unsuccessful.

For node images, annotations are additional node-like children of a composite node image. Legal annotation symbols are defined in the Drop Site Editor, and their names and drop sites can be used in this function.

For arc images, annotations are usually arrow-heads that can be added at three drop sites, "Start", "Middle" and "End", in the order defined in the Arc Type Editor. The annotation name in this case is the *logical* or *displayed* name for the annotation, which is the same as the *physical* name (such as "Normal arrowhead") unless overridden in the Arc Type Editor.

See also **diagram-image-delete-annotation**.

diagram-image-annotation-get-drop-site

string (**diagram-image-annotation-get-drop-site** *long* **card_id**,*long* **image_id**, *long*

annotation_id)

Gets the drop site name for the given annotation, or the empty string if the call fails.

diagram-image-annotation-get-logical-name

string (**diagram-image-annotation-get-logical-name** *long* **card_id**,*long* **image_id**, *long* **annotation_id**)

Gets the *logical name* of the given annotation, or the empty string if the call fails.

The *logical name* is the same as the *name* for a node annotation. For an arc annotation, the logical name is the same as the name unless the logical name for the annotation has been changed in the Annotation Properties dialog in the Arc Type Editor. All logical names for a physical arc annotation are listed in the status line when the cursor is moved over the annotation in the diagram card symbol palette.

The logical name is used to reflect a notational convention for a particular arc, even though the underlying arc annotation symbol may be used several times in different contexts.

See also **diagram-image-annotation-get-name**.

diagram-image-annotation-get-name

string (**diagram-image-annotation-get-name** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **annotation_id**)

Gets the name of the given annotation, or the empty string if the call fails.

See also **diagram-image-annotation-get-logical-name**.

diagram-image-delete

long (**diagram-image-delete** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Erases and deletes the given image. Note that if quick edit mode is on, damaged areas will not be redrawn automatically. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-delete-annotation

long (**diagram-image-delete-annotation** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **annotation_id**)

Deletes an annotation from a node or arc image.

diagram-image-draw

long (**diagram-image-draw** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Draws the image, returning 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-draw-text

long (**diagram-image-draw-text** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**,*string* **text**, *optional string* **region_name**)

Draws text in the image. This is a lower-level operation than **diagram-object-format-text**since it is on a per-image basis and does not use the format string as defined in the Diagram Type Manager. This may be useful for displaying text that the format string will not allow, such as user-defined attribute values.

region_name (default value "0") names the text region of the image for images that have multiple text regions, such as composites, divided rectangle images, and arcs.

Simple images, such as ellipses and rectangles, have one region called "0".

Divided rectangles have as many regions as the number of divisions and, for a divided rectangle that is not part of a composite, the naming is "0", "1", "2" and so on.

Arc images always have three regions called "Start", "Middle" and "End".

Composite node images have a region "0", but**diagram-image-draw-text** can be used for the components: the text regions of the components are named automatically. For a given node type, see the node type editor for a list of text regions and a visual indication of where these regions are on the composite.

diagram-image-erase

long (**diagram-image-erase** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Erases the given image. Note that if quick edit mode is on, damaged areas will not be redrawn automatically. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-get-brush-colour

string (**diagram-image-get-brush-colour** *long* **diagram_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Gets the brush (fill) colour for the given image. The colour is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK" (see wxWindows documentation). Returns a colour string if successful, the empty string otherwise.

diagram-image-get-card

long (**diagram-image-get-card** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Given the id of a card somewhere in the hierarchy, and the id of a node or arc image on one of the cards in the hierarchy, get the id of the card on which the image appears. Returns -1 if unsuccessful.

This may be needed, for example, when retrieving arc images from arc objects, in order to find the level at which the connection is taking place.

diagram-image-get-first-annotation

long (**diagram-image-get-first-annotation** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the id of the first annotation for a node image (another node image) or an arc image (an annotation image) or -1 if no annotation is present. Together with **diagram-image-get-next-annotation**, this allows iteration through all annotations of an image.

diagram-image-get-first-expansion

long (**diagram-image-get-first-expansion** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Get the first expansion card (always a diagram card) from the given image on the given card. Further expansion cards are obtained by calling **diagram-image-get-next-expansion.** Returns -1 if no expansion cards.

diagram-image-get-height

double (**diagram-image-get-height** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the floating-point value of the image height, or rather the height of the bounding box enclosing the image.

diagram-image-get-item

long (**diagram-image-get-item** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the hypertext item corresponding to the given image on the given card, or -1 if unsuccessful.

diagram-image-get-next-annotation

long (**diagram-image-get-next-annotation**)

Returns the id of the next annotation for a node (another node image) or an arc (an annotation image) image, or -1 if no further annotations exist. Together with **diagram-image-get-first-annotation**, this allows iteration through all annotations of an image.

diagram-image-get-next-expansion

long (**diagram-image-get-next-expansion**)

Following a call of **diagram-image-get-first-expansion** for an image on a specified card, get the next expansion card. Returns -1 on failure or if no more expansion cards.

diagram-image-get-object

long (**diagram-image-get-object** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Gets the id of the node or arc object corresponding to the given node or arc image id. Returns -1 on failure.

diagram-image-get-pen-colour

string (**diagram-image-get-pen-colour** *long* **diagram_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Gets the pen (outline) colour for the given image. The colour is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK" (see wxWindows documentation). Returns a colour string if successful, the empty string otherwise.

diagram-image-get-text-colour

string (**diagram-image-get-text-colour** *long* **diagram_id**, *long* **image_id**, *optional string* **region_name = "0"**)

Gets the text colour for the given image. The colour is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK" (see wxWindows documentation).

The optional parameter *region_name* identifies the text region, for composite images or images (such as divided rectangles) that have multiple text regions.

Returns a colour string if successful, an empty string otherwise.

diagram-image-get-width

double (**diagram-image-get-width** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the floating-point value of the image width, or rather the width of the bounding box enclosing the image.

diagram-image-get-x

double (**diagram-image-get-x** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the floating-point value of the image x coordinate (at the centre of the image).

diagram-image-get-y

double (**diagram-image-get-y** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the floating-point value of the image y coordinate (at the centre of the image).

diagram-image-is-shown

long (**diagram-image-is-shown** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns 1 if the image is visible, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-move

long (**diagram-image-move** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**,*double* **x**, *double* **y**)

Moves the centre of the image to the given position and redraws it. Note that if quick edit mode is on, damaged areas will not be redrawn automatically. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-pending-delete

long (**diagram-image-pending-delete** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns 1 if the diagram image is about to be deleted by Hardy.

This function is occasionally necessary when you need to determine, from within an arc deletion event, whether a node attached to that arc can be safely deleted by the custom code. If the current arc image is being deleted automatically because a node is being deleted, then calling this function will determine that it is not safe to delete the node image, because the node image would be deleted twice.

Important note: if the node image to be tested is potentially part of a composite, you should check if there is a parent node image, and if so, whether there is a deletion pending on that, and so on.

diagram-image-put-to-front

long (**diagram-image-put-to-front** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *optional long* **front = 1**)

Puts the image to the front (if front = 1) or back (if front = 0) of the canvas.

diagram-image-resize

long (**diagram-image-resize** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *double* **width**, *double* **height**)

Resizes the image to the given width and height, and redraws it. Note that if quick edit mode is on, damaged areas will not be redrawn automatically. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-select

long (**diagram-image-select** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **flag**)

Selects and redraws the image if *flag* is 1, deselects if *flag* is 0. Note that other parts of the diagram may be damaged if an image is deselected, since control points are erased. If quick edit mode is on, the application must call **diagram-card-redraw** to refresh the diagram.

diagram-image-selected

long (**diagram-image-selected** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns 1 if the node or arc image is selected, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-set-brush-colour

long (**diagram-image-set-brush-colour** *long* **diagram_id**, *long* **image_id**, *string* **colour**)

Sets the brush (fill) colour for the given image, and redraws the image. The colour is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK" (see wxWindows documentation). Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-set-pen-colour

long (**diagram-image-set-pen-colour** *long* **diagram_id**, *long* **image_id**, *string* **colour**)

Sets the pen (outline) colour for the given image, and redraws the image. The colour is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK" (see wxWindows documentation). Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-set-shadow-mode

long (**diagram-image-set-shadow-mode** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **shadow = 1**,*optional long* **offset_x = 0**, *optional long* **offset_y = 0**)

Sets the shadow mode (1 for shadow, 0 for no shadow) for the given image. Optional shadow offsets can be given; 0 for an offset means assume the default.

diagram-image-set-text-colour

long (**diagram-image-set-text-colour** *long* **diagram_id**, *long* **image_id**, *string* **colour**, *optional string* **region_name = "0"**)

Sets the text colour for the given image, and redraws the image. The colour is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK" (see wxWindows documentation).

The optional parameter *region_name* identifies the text region, for composite images or images (such as divided rectangles) that have multiple text regions.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

diagram-image-show

long (**diagram-image-show** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **show**)

If *show* is TRUE, the image will be in the visible state (the default). If *show* is FALSE, the image will be in the invisible state, and not drawn or sensitive to mouse events. The function works recursively for composite images.

diagram-item-get-image

long (**diagram-item-get-image** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the diagram node or arc image corresponding to the given hypertext item on the given card, or -1 if unsuccessful (for example if the item is not on a diagram card).

12.10. Node image functions

The following functions apply to a diagram node image.

node-image-create

long (**node-image-create** *long* **card_id**, *string* **node_type**)

Creates a new node and node image. The new node is stored at the root of the diagram hierarchy; the node image is associated with the displaying card and its id is returned if the operation is successful. The *node_type* parameter must be a valid node type for this diagram type, as defined interactively using the Diagram Type Manager. Returns -1 if unsuccessful. Note that the image is not drawn automatically immediately after creation, to give your application a chance to move it somewhere appropriate using **diagram-image-move**.

Use **node-image-duplicate** if you wish to create a new image for an *existing* node object.

node-image-duplicate

long (**node-image-duplicate** *long* **card_id**, *long* **node_id**)

Creates a new node image for the existing node object. Give the destination card and node object id. Returns -1 if unsuccessful.

Note that the image is not drawn automatically immediately after creation, to give your application a chance to move it somewhere appropriate using **diagram-image-move**.

node-image-get-container

long (**node-image-get-container** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the id of the container this node is in, otherwise -1.

node-image-get-first-arc-image

long (**node-image-get-first-arc-image** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Given a diagram card id and node image id, retrieves the id of the first arc image associated with the node. Calling node-image-get-next-arcImage will generate any further arc images. Returns -1 on failure.

node-image-get-first-child

long (**node-image-get-first-child** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Given a diagram card id and composite node image id, retrieves the id of the first child of the image. Returns -1 on failure or to signify no more images. Further child images are generated by calls of **node-image-get-next-child**.

node-image-get-first-container-region

long (**node-image-get-first-container-region** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the id of the first container region belonging to the given container node image, or -1 if the image is not a container. Further container regions are generated by**node-image-get-next-container-region**.

A container image has one or more *container regions*, each of which can contain other node images (subject to constraints defined in the Node Type Editor). The user may split existing container regions into further regions (using control-right click to bring up the container region menu).

A container region is a node image in its own right, with a single corresponding node object of type *Container region*. This means that a container region may be linked by arcs to other nodes.

node-image-get-parent

long (**node-image-get-parent** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the id of the parent node image of this node image, or zero if there is none, or if the parent is a container region of a different node.

node-image-get-container-parent

long (**node-image-get-container-parent** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns the id of the container region which is a parent of this node image, or zero if there is none. By implication, the node image and the parent belong to separate node objects.

node-image-get-next-arc-image

long (**node-image-get-next-arc-image**)

Following a call of **node-image-get-first-arc-image** for a specified node image on a card, retrieves the id of the next arc image associated with that node image. Returns -1 on failure or to signify no more images.

node-image-get-next-child

long (**node-image-get-next-child**)

Returns the ID of the next child of the composite, or -1 if no further child images are present. Together with **node-image-get-first-child**, this allows iteration through all child images of a composite.

node-image-get-next-container-region

long (**node-image-get-next-container-region**)

Returns the id of the next container region belonging to the given container node image or -1 if there are no further regions. The node image is specified by the last call of**node-image-get-first-container-region**.

node-image-is-composite

long (**node-image-is-composite** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns 1 if node is a composite, otherwise 0.

A composite image is an image that has, or is capable of having, one or more child images. This includes container nodes.

node-image-is-container

long (**node-image-is-container** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns 1 if node is a container, otherwise 0.

A container is a node image that has been defined in the Node Type Editor or Node Symbol Editor to accept certain types of contained node images, which form a composite relationship with the container.

node-image-is-junction

long (**node-image-is-junction** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Returns 1 if the image is a junction image, otherwise 0. This test must be used when traversing node images since junction images have fewer properties than normal.

A junction is an image used in multiway arcs, with some properties similar to ordinary node images, but with no corresponding node object, and it is never a composite. It is usually represented by a 'metafile' symbol that can be rotated according to the direction of the multiway arc.

node-image-order-arcs

long (**node-image-order-arcs** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**, *long* **attachment**, *multifield* **arc_images**)

Reorders the arc images linked to this node image at this specific attachment point, according to the ordering of the list of arc images. Any arc images not explicitly mentioned in the list will be appended.

12.11. Node object functions

The following functions apply to a diagram node object.

node-object-get-first-arc-object

long (**node-object-get-first-arc-object** *long* **card_id**, *long* **image_id**)

Given a diagram card id and node object id, retrieves the id of the first arc object associated with the node. Calling **node-object-get-next-arc-object** generates any further arc objects. Returns -1 on failure.

Note that there are no functions to retrieve the 'to' node and 'from' node from an arc object, because there may be several connections between nodes for the same arc object (for instance, an arc may be represented at several levels of a diagram, between different nodes). To retrieve the nodes at either end of an arc, get the arc *image(s)*, then the 'to' and 'from' node *images*, and then the node*objects* from these.

node-object-get-next-arc-object

long (**node-object-get-next-arc-object**)

Following a call of **node-object-get-first-arc-object** for a specified diagram card and node, retrieves the id of the next arc object associated with the node. Returns -1 on failure or to signify no more objects.

Note that there are no functions to retrieve the 'to' node and 'from' node from an arc object, because there may be several connections between nodes for the same arc object (for instance, an arc may be represented at several levels of a diagram, between different nodes). To retrieve the nodes at either end of an arc, get the arc *image(s)*, then the 'to' and 'from' node *images*, and then the node*objects* from these.

12.12. Arc annotation functions

The following functions apply to a diagram arc image annotation.

arc-annotation-get-name

string (**arc-annotation-get-name** *long* **card_id**, *long* **annotation_id**)

Returns the symbol name as used in the Arc Symbol Editor.

12.13. Container region functions

The following functions apply to a diagram container image.

container-region-add-node-image

long (**container-region-add-node-image** *long* **card_id**, *long* **container_id**,*long* **contained_image_id**, *double* **x**, *double* **y**)

Moves *contained_image_id* into *container_id* if legal, moving the contained node to the given coordinates.

See **node-image-get-first-container-region** for an explanation of container regions.

container-region-remove-node-image

long (**container-region-remove-node-image** *long* **card_id**, *long* **container_id**, *long* **contained_image_id**, *double* **x**, *double* **y**)

Moves *contained_image_id* out of *container_id*, without deleting *contained_image_id*. The contained node is moved to the given coordinates.

See **node-image-get-first-container-region** for an explanation of container regions.

12.14. Hypertext card functions

The following functions are relevant to hypertext cards.

hypertext-card-create

long (**hypertext-card-create** *long* **parent_id**, *string* **hypertext_type**, *optional long* **iconic = 0**)

Creates a new hypertext card and returns the id, or -1 if the call failed. *parent_id* may be zero (no parent) or a valid parent card id. *hypertext_type* should be a valid hypertext type, as defined using the interactive Hypertext Type Manager.

If *iconic* is 1, the card will be shown in the iconic state.

hypertext-card-get-current-char

int (**hypertext-card-get-current-char** *long* **card_id**)

Gets the current character position for a successful search operation, or the character position calculated by **hypertext-card-get-offset-position**.

hypertext-card-get-current-line

int (**hypertext-card-get-current-line** *long* **card_id**)

Gets the current line number for a successful search operation, or the line number calculated by **hypertext-card-get-offset-position**.

hypertext-card-get-first-selection

long (**hypertext-card-get-first-selection** *long* **card_id**)

Get the first selected block for a given a hypertext card id. Returns -1 if no more selected blocks.

hypertext-card-get-next-selection can be used to get the next selection.

hypertext-card-get-line-length

int (**hypertext-card-get-line-length** *long* **card_id**, *long* **line_no**)

Gets the number of characters in the given line, or -1 if the line was not found.

hypertext-card-get-next-selection

long (**hypertext-card-get-next-selection**)

Given a hypertext card id, get the next selected block. Returns -1 if no more selected blocks.

Use **hypertext-card-get-first-selection** to get the first selection.

hypertext-card-get-no-lines

int (**hypertext-card-get-no-lines** *long* **card_id**)

Gets the number of lines currently displayed in the hypertext card.

hypertext-card-get-offset-position

long (**hypertext-card-get-offset-position** *long* **card_id**, *long* **line_pos**,*long* **char_pos**, *long* **offset**)

Given a position in the text and an offset from it, calculates the position in terms of line number and character position and returns 1 if successful.

hypertext-card-get-current-line and **hypertext-card-get-current-char** can be used to find the position.

hypertext-card-get-span-text

string (**hypertext-card-get-span-text** *long* **card_id**, *long* **line1**,*long* **char1**, *long* **line2**, *long* **char2**,*optional long* **convert_new_lines**)

Gets the text between the two positions, optionally converting newlines to spaces (the default if the final parameter is omitted).

hypertext-card-insert-text

int (**hypertext-card-insert-text** *long* **card_id**, *long* **line**, *long* **char**,*string* **text**)

Inserts the given text at the given line and character position.

Warning: This function has not been tested extensively and probably contain bugs.

hypertext-card-load-file

long (**hypertext-card-load-file** *long* **card_id**, *string* **filename**)

Loads the given hypertext (or plain) file onto the given hypertext card. Returns 1 for success, 0 for failure.

hypertext-card-save-file

long (**hypertext-card-save-file** *long* **card_id**, *string* **file**)

Saves the hypertext file on the given hypertext card in the specified file, returning 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

hypertext-card-string-search

long (**hypertext-card-string-search** *long* **card_id**, *string* **search_string**,*optional long* **line_pos**, *optional long* **char_pos**)

Search for the given string from the given position, returning 1 if successful.

hypertext-card-get-current-line and **hypertext-card-get-current-char** can be used to retrieve the position of the matching text.

The search start position may be omitted, in which case the start position is taken to be the position of the previous match plus one.

The search is case-independent.

hypertext-card-translate

long (**hypertext-card-translate** *long* **card_id**, *word* **func**)

Starts the translation process for a hypertext card. *func* must be a function that takes four integer arguments: the card id, the event type, the current block type (if appropriate) and the current block id (if appropriate).

The event type is one of:

1. Start of block
2. End of block
3. Start of file
4. End of file
5. Double newline (which often means a paragraph break)

The callback function is responsible for opening and closing the file at the start and end of file, and outputting appropriate codes (such as HTML codes) at the start and end of blocks. Note that the block type passed is always -1 at the end of a block, so the programmer must maintain a stack of block types if he or she wishes to make use of the block type at the end of the block.

Use the function *hypertext-card-translator-output* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to output text, *hypertext-card-translator-open-file* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to open a file, and *hypertext-card-translator-close-file* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to close a file. Up to two output streams may be opened.

hypertext-card-translator-close-file

long (**hypertext-card-translator-close-file** *long* **card_id**, *long* **which_file**)

Closes the translation output stream, identified by the number *which_file*.

hypertext-card-translator-open-file

long (**hypertext-card-translator-open-file** *long* **card_id**, *long* **which_file**, *string* **filename**)

Opens the translation output stream (identified by the number *which_file*).

hypertext-card-translator-output

long (**hypertext-card-translator-output** *long* **card_id**, *long* **which_file**, *string* **text**)

Outputs text on the translation output stream identified by the number *which_file*.

If *which_file* is -1, all open streams will be used.

12.15. Hypertext card block functions

The following functions are relevant to hypertext blocks.

hypertext-block-add

long (**hypertext-block-add** *long* **card_id**, *long* **line1**, *long* **char1**,*long* **line2**, *long* **char2**,*long* **block_type**)

Marks the given span of text as a block of the given type.

Note that if *block_type* has the value of 9999, the block will be a selection with no hypertext block or item. If the user deselects this selection (for example with shift-left click), the block will disappear without a trace. Subsequently setting a selection block type to a valid type identifier will turn the selection into a proper hypertext block.

The following values of *block_type* are recognised as standard:

1. hyBLOCK_NORMAL
2. hyBLOCK_RED
3. hyBLOCK_BLUE
4. hyBLOCK_GREEN
5. hyBLOCK_LARGE_HEADING
6. hyBLOCK_SMALL_HEADING
7. hyBLOCK_ITALIC

8. hyBLOCK_BOLD
9. hyBLOCK_INVISIBLE_SECTION
10. hyBLOCK_LARGE_VISIBLE_SECTION
11. hyBLOCK_SMALL_VISIBLE_SECTION
12. hyBLOCK_SMALL_TEXT
13. hyBLOCK_RED_ITALIC
14. hyBLOCK_TELETYPE

hypertext-block-clear

long (**hypertext-block-clear** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**)

Clears the current block, returning 1 if successful. This deletes the hypertext item and links.

hypertext-block-get-item

long (**hypertext-block-get-item** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**)

Given a hypertext card id and block id (*not* hyperitem id), get the Hardy hyperitem associated with the block. There may not be a hyperitem associated with the block if the user has made an initial, temporary selection. A Hardy hyperitem is not created until the block type has been set.

hypertext-block-get-text

string (**hypertext-block-get-text** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**)

Given a hypertext card id and block id (*not* hyperitem id), get the plain text within the block (up to a limit of 1000 characters).

hypertext-block-get-type

long (**hypertext-block-get-type** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**)

Given a hypertext card id and block id (*not* hyperitem id), get the block's type (the number used to identify the mapping to text colours and styles).

hypertext-block-selected

long (**hypertext-block-selected** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**)

Given a hypertext card id and block id, return 1 if the block is selected or 0 if it is not.

hypertext-block-set-type

long (**hypertext-block-set-type** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**, *long* **type_id**)

Given a hypertext card id and block id (*not* hyperitem id), sets the block's type (the number used to identify the mapping to text colours and styles), deselects the block if selected, and 'recompiles' and displays the file. Recompilation involves scanning the entire file in order to resolve block scope and compute actual font and colour information, and is necessary if the text attributes change in any way (including selection/deselection). The display position may change as a side effect of this call, and any other call involving recompilation.

12.16. Hypertext card item functions

The following functions are relevant to hypertext card items.

hypertext-item-get-block

long (**hypertext-item-get-block** *long* **card_id**, *long* **item_id**)

Given a hypertext card id and hyperitem id, get the block associated with the item. There may not be a block associated with the item if the item is the special item (used for card linking without using an explicit item).

12.17. Media card functions

The following functions are relevant to media cards. The media card is an experimental card which will eventually replace the hypertext card: it is editable and has more features than the hypertext card. It is based on a set of media classes written by Matthew Flatt of Rice University.

Note that this facility will not be included in distributions of Hardy outside AIAI until early 1996.

Media cards allow mark up using either standard attributes such as weight, family, style and underlining, or attributes that are combined into *font mappings* in the same way as the hypertext card. Blocks are associated with the latter but not the former.

Some media card functions accept a *position*, a single integer representing a character index in the buffer. A position can be converted into a line number and character position within that line.

12.17.1. Events

These are the media card events you can intercept.

Event	Description
BlockLeftClick	Called when a block is left-clicked. Takes card, block id, position, shift (1 or 0), control (1 or 0). Return 0 to veto default event processing, 1 otherwise.
BlockRightClick	Called when a block is right-clicked. Takes card, block id, position, shift (1 or 0), control (1 or 0). Return 0 to veto default event processing, 1 otherwise.
CustomMenu	Called when a custom menu item is invoked. Takes card and menu item name.

media-block-create

long (**media-block-create** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_type**, *optional long* **start_position=-1**, *optional long* **end_position=-1**)

Creates a block of the given type, returning the new block id. start_position and end_position specify the span of the block; if they are both -1 or absent, the current selection will be used.

media-block-get-item

long (**media-block-get-item** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**)

Returns the hypertext item for the given block id.

media-block-get-position

long (**media-block-get-position** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**)

Returns the start position of the block.

media-block-get-type

long (**media-block-get-type** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**)

Returns the type id of the block.

media-block-set-type

long (**media-block-set-type** *long* **card_id**, *long* **block_id**, *long* **block_type**)

Sets the type of the block. Currently does *not* redraw the block in the new style.

media-item-get-block

long (**media-item-get-block** *long* **card_id**, *long* **item_id**)

Gets the block corresponding to the hypertext item.

media-card-append-text

long (**media-card-append-text** *long* **card_id**, *string* **text**)

Appends the given text at the end of the card's contents.

media-card-apply-family

long (**media-card-apply-family** *long* **card_id**, *string* **family**, *long* **from=-1**, *long* **to=-1**)

Applies the given family to the current selection (if the *from* and *to* parameters are omitted or are -1) or to the given span of text.

family may be one of wxSWISS, wxROMAN, wxDECORATIVE and wxMODERN.

media-card-apply-foreground-colour

long (**media-card-apply-foreground-colour** *long* **card_id**, *string* **colour**, *long* **from=-1**, *long* **to=-1**)

Applies the given colour to the current selection (if the *from* and *to* parameters are omitted or are -1) or to the given span of text.

media-card-apply-point-size

long (**media-card-apply-point-size** *long* **card_id**, *long* **size**, *long* **from=-1**, *long* **to=-1**)

Applies the given point size to the current selection (if the *from* and *to* parameters are omitted or are -1) or to the given span of text.

media-card-apply-style

long (**media-card-apply-style** *long* **card_id**, *string* **style**, *long* **from=-1**, *long* **to=-1**)

Applies the given font style to the current selection (if the *from* and *to* parameters are omitted or are -1) or to the given span of text.

style may be one of wxNORMAL, wxITALIC.

media-card-apply-underline

long (**media-card-apply-underline** *long* **card_id**, *long* **underline**, *long* **from=-1**, *long* **to=-1**)

Applies underlining to the current selection (if the *from* and *to* parameters are omitted or are -1) or to the given span of text.

underline may be 1 for underlining, 0 for no underlining.

media-card-apply-weight

long (**media-card-apply-weight** *long* **card_id**, *string* **weight**, *long* **from=-1**, *long* **to=-1**)

Applies normal or bold weight to the current selection (if the *from* and *to* parameters are omitted or are -1) or to the given span of text.

weight may be wxNORMAL or wxBOLD.

media-card-clear

long (**media-card-clear** *long* **card_id**)

Clears the contents of the card.

media-card-clear-all-blocks

long (**media-card-clear-all-blocks** *long* **card_id**)

Clears the blocks from the card, leaving a plain text file with no styles or graphic images.

media-card-create

long (**media-card-create** *long* **parent_id**, *string* **media_type**, *optional long* **iconic = 0**)

Creates a new media card and returns the id, or -1 if the call failed. *parent_id* may be zero (no parent) or a valid parent card id. *hypertext_type* should be a valid media type, as defined using the interactive Media Type Manager.

If *iconic* is 1, the card will be shown in the iconic state.

media-card-copy

long (**media-card-copy** *long* **card_id**)

Copies the selected text to the clipboard.

media-card-cut

long (**media-card-cut** *long* **card_id**)

Copies the selected text to the clipboard, and then clears the selection.

media-card-delete

long (**media-card-delete** *long* **card_id**, *long* **from=-1**, *long* **to=-1**)

Deletes the current selection (if the *from* and *to* parameters are omitted or are -1), or given span of text if the parameters are specified.

media-card-find-string

long (**media-card-find-string** *long* **card_id**, *string* **text**, *long* **from=-1**, *long* **to=-1**, *long* **case_sensitive=1**, *long* **direction=1**) Finds the given *text*, starting the search from the beginning if *from* is absent or -1, and continuing until the end if *to* if is absent or -1.

case_sensitive should be 1 to be case sensitive, 0 to be case insensitive. *direction* should be 1 to search forward, -1 to search backward.

The return value is the text start position if the text was found, or -1 if the text was not found.

media-card-get-character

long (**media-card-get-character** *long* **card_id**, *long* **position**)

Returns the ASCII code of the character at the given position.

media-card-get-selection-start

long (**media-card-get-selection-start** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the position of the start of the selection, or the cursor position if there is no selection.

media-card-get-selection-end

long (**media-card-get-selection-end** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the position of the end of the selection, or -1 if there is no selection.

media-card-get-first-block

long (**media-card-get-first-block** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the first block id (not necessarily the first in the card, but first from the point of view of getting all blocks).

media-card-get-last-position

long (**media-card-get-last-position** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the position of the last element in the card. This will never be less than zero.

media-card-get-line-length

long (**media-card-get-line-length** *long* **card_id**, *long* **line**)

Returns the length of the given line (starting from zero).

media-card-get-line-for-position

long (**media-card-get-line-for-position** *long* **card_id**, *long* **position**)

Returns the number of the line on which *position* appears.

media-card-get-next-block

long (**media-card-get-next-block** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the next block id (not necessarily the next in the card, but next from the point of view of getting all blocks).

media-card-get-position-for-line

long (**media-card-get-position-for-line** *long* **card_id**, *long* **line**)

Returns the start position for the given line.

media-card-get-number-of-lines

long (**media-card-get-number-of-lines** *long* **card_id**)

Returns the total number of lines in the text card.

media-card-get-text

string (**media-card-get-text** *long* **card_id**, **long***start*, **long***end*)

Returns the text between the given positions.

media-card-insert-text

long (**media-card-insert-text** *long* **card_id**, **string***text*, **long***pos=-1*)

Inserts text at the given position, or at the cursor if *pos* is -1.

media-card-insert-image

long (**media-card-insert-image** *long* **card_id**, **string***filename*, **long***pos=-1*)

Inserts a Windows bitmap at the given position, or at the cursor if *pos* is -1.

media-card-load-file

long (**media-card-load-file** *long* **card_id**, **string***filename*)

Loads a file into the media card. Can be a plain text file or a media file (usual extension .med).

media-card-paste

long (**media-card-paste** *long* **card_id**)

Pastes the contents of the clipboard (if there is any and it is textual) into the media card.

media-card-redo

long (**media-card-redo** *long* **card_id**)

Redoes the last media card command (except for block operations).

media-card-save-file

long (**media-card-save-file** *long* **card_id**, **string***filename*)

Saves the media file.

media-card-scroll-to-position

long (**media-card-scroll-to-position** *long* **card_id**, **long***position*)

Scrolls to the given position.

media-card-select-block

long (**media-card-select-block** *long* **card_id**, **long***block*, **long***select=1*)

Selects the given block if *select* is 1, deslects if *select* is 0.

media-card-set-selection

long (**media-card-set-selection** *long* **card_id**, **long***from*, **long***to*)

Sets the text between the given positions.

media-card-undo

long (**media-card-undo** *long* **card_id**)

Undoes the last media card command (except for block operations).

12.18. Text card functions

These functions may be used with text cards.

text-card-load-file

long (**text-card-load-file** *long* **card_id**, *string* **file**)

Loads the specified text file onto the given text card. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

12.19. Diagram Definition functions

The following functions access diagram definition information.

hardy-diagram-definition-get-first-arc-type

string (**hardy-diagram-definition-get-first-arc-type** *string* **name**)

For the given diagram type, gets the first arc name in the diagram definition's list of arc types.

Returns the empty string if none are found.

hardy-diagram-definition-get-next-arc-type

string (**hardy-diagram-definition-get-next-arc-type**)

Gets the next arc name in the diagram definition's list of arc types.

Returns the empty string if no more are found.

hardy-diagram-definition-get-first-node-type

string (**hardy-diagram-definition-get-first-node-type** *string* **name**)

For the given diagram type, gets the first node name in the diagram definition's list of node types.

Returns the empty string if none are found.

hardy-diagram-definition-get-next-node-type

string (**hardy-diagram-definition-get-next-node-type**)

Gets the next node name in the diagram definition's list of node types.

Returns the empty string if no more are found.

hardy-get-first-diagram-definition

string (**hardy-get-first-diagram-definition**)

Gets the first name in the list of diagram definitions currently loaded.

Returns the empty string if there are none loaded.

hardy-get-next-diagram-definition

string (**hardy-get-next-diagram-definition**)

Gets the next name in the list of diagram definitions currently loaded.

Returns the empty string when there are no more.

object-type-get-first-attribute-name

string (**object-type-get-first-attribute-name** *string* **diagram_def_name***string* **object_type_name** *optional string* **node_or_arc**)

Gets the first attribute name of an object (node or arc) type definition. If *node_or_arc* is "any", this function will search for either a node or arc of the given name. Otherwise, you can specify "node" or "arc" to be more specific.

object-type-get-next-attribute-name

string (**object-type-get-next-attribute-name**)

Gets the next attribute name of an object (node or arc) type definition.

12.20. Windows printing functions

The following functions and event handlers enable Windows printing to be manipulated.

12.20.1. Windows printing event handlers

- OnPreparePrinting: called before any pages are printed. The function takes no arguments. The function should return 1 (processed) or 0 (default processing should be done).
- OnPrintPage: called when each page should be printed. Takes page number (integer), device context (integer), page width in pixels (integer), page height in pixels (integer), page width in mm (integer), page height in mm (integer). The function should return 1 (processed) or 0 (default processing should be done).
- OnGetPageInfo: called to get information from the application. Takes a name and an integer value. Return -1 to allow default processing; otherwise: if the name is HASPAGE, return 1 if the document has this page (given by the second argument), or 0 to finish printing. If the name is MINPAGE, MAXPAGE, PAGEFROM, PAGETO, return an appropriate value. See the printing demo in the HARDY SDK for more details.

hardy-preview-all

long (**hardy-preview-all** *long* **Page_From**, *long* **Page_To**)

Invokes Windows previewing for the given page range, for all diagram cards if no custom printing functionality is defined, or for whatever pages the application defines by intercepting the OnPrintPage event handler.

If the page range values are both -1, the entire document will be previewed. Unlike with printing, flow of program control continues immediately after the preview window appears, so be careful not to call the function again.

hardy-preview-diagram-card

long (**hardy-preview-diagram-card** *long* **card**)

Invokes Windows previewing for the given diagram card. Unlike with printing, flow of program control continues immediately after the preview window appears, so be careful not to call the function again.

hardy-print-all

long (**hardy-print-all** *long* **prompt**, *long* **page_from**, *long* **page_to**)

Invokes Windows printing for the given page range, for all diagram cards if no custom printing functionality is defined, or for whatever pages the application defines by intercepting the OnPrintPage event handler.

If *prompt* is 1, the standard print dialog box is shown; otherwise, the document will be printed immediately. If the page range values are both -1, the entire document will be printed.

Unlike with previewing, flow of program control stops until printing has finished (or the user cancels the dialog box).

hardy-print-diagram-card

long (**hardy-print-diagram-card** *long* **card**, *long* **prompt**)

Invokes Windows printing for the given diagram card.

If *prompt* is 1, the standard print dialog box is shown; otherwise, the diagram will be printed immediately.

hardy-print-diagram-in-box

long (**hardy-print-diagram-in-box** *long* **card**, *double* **x**, *double* **y**, *double* **width**, *double* **height**)

This function should be used from within an OnPrintPage event handler to scale and position the given diagram on the page. The *x, y* coordinate represents the top left of the bounding box to contain the diagram. The units are in device units (pixels). It should not be called from outside OnPrintPage since it implicitly references the current print or preview device context.

hardy-print-diagram-page

long (**hardy-print-diagram-page** *long* **card**, *long* **page_num**)

This function should be used from within an OnPrintPage event handler to call the default diagram printing code for this page. It should not be called from outside OnPrintPage since it implicitly references the current print or preview device context.

hardy-print-get-header-footer

string (**hardy-print-get-header-footer** *long* **field**)

This function should be used to get the value of a header or footer field, used when printing a standard diagram page or printing the headers and footers with *hardy-print-header-footer* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

field should be an integer between 1 and 6, referencing the left, middle and right fields of the header and footer respectively.

hardy-print-get-info

double (**hardy-print-get-info** *string* **name**)

Returns information according to the *name* argument passed. The value of *name* can be:

- TEXTSCALE: returns an appropriate scaling factor for printing text. It sets the scaling for the printer or preview device context, and returns the scaling factor. Note that the factor *returned* does not include the adjustment made for scaling for a preview device context.
- LEFTMARGIN: returns the value of the left margin setting, in millimetres.
- RIGHTMARGIN: returns the value of the right margin setting, in millimetres.
- TOPMARGIN: returns the value of the top margin setting, in millimetres.
- BOTTOMMARGIN: returns the value of the bottom margin setting, in millimetres.
- HEADERRULE: returns 1 or 0 for header rule on or off.
- FOOTERRULE: returns 1 or 0 for footer rule on or off.

hardy-print-header-footer

long (**hardy-print-header-footer** *long* **page_num**)

This function should be used from within an OnPrintPage event handler to call the default header and footer printing code for this page. It should not be called from outside OnPrintPage since it implicitly references the current print or preview device context.

You can use *hardy-print-set-info* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) and *hardy-print-set-header-footer* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to change the look of headers and footers for this page.

hardy-print-set-header-footer

long (**hardy-print-set-header-footer** *string* **text**, *long* **field**)

This function should be used to set a header or footer field, used when printing a standard diagram page or printing the headers and footers with *hardy-print-header-footer* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

field should be an integer between 1 and 6, referencing the left, middle and right fields of the header and footer respectively.

hardy-print-set-info

long (**hardy-print-set-info** *string* **name**, *float* **value**)

Sets printing information according to the *name* argument passed. The value of *name* can be:

- LEFTMARGIN: sets the value of the left margin setting, in millimetres.
- RIGHTMARGIN: sets the value of the right margin setting, in millimetres.
- TOPMARGIN: sets the value of the top margin setting, in millimetres.
- BOTTOMMARGIN: sets the value of the bottom margin setting, in millimetres.
- HEADERRULE: 1 or 0 for header rule on or off.

- FOOTERRULE: 1 or 0 for footer rule on or off.

Note that margin settings are only used automatically when printing a diagram page or headers and footers. For custom pages, these margins must be taken into account by the custom code.

hardy-print-set-title

long (**hardy-print-set-title** *string* **title**)

This function should be used to set the current page title (used when printing a standard diagram page).

hardy-print-text-in-box

long (**hardy-print-text-in-box** *string* **text**, *double* **x**, *double* **y**, *double* **width**, *double* **height**, *string* **how**)

This function should be used from within an OnPrintPage event handler to format text within the given bounding box using the current device context scaling and font. The *x, y* coordinate represents the centre of the bounding box to contain the text.

The *how* parameter should be one of CENTREHORIZ, CENTREVERT, CENTREBOTH and NONE to determine how the text should be formatted.

The units are in device units (pixels). This function should not be called from outside OnPrintPage since it implicitly references the current print or preview device context.

12.21. Miscellaneous functions

The following are miscellaneous Hardy functions.

convert-bitmap-to-rtf

long (**convert-bitmap-to-rtf** *string* **bitmap-file**, *string* **output-file**)

Converts an existing RGB-encoded Windows bitmap file to RTF format for inclusion in an RTF document.

convert-metafile-to-rtf

long (**convert-metafile-to-rtf** *string* **metafile-file**, *string* **output-file**)

Converts an existing placeable Windows metafile file to RTF format for inclusion in an RTF document.

dde-advise-global

long (**dde-advise-global** *char* * **item**, *char* * **data**)

Sends a DDE ADVISE message to all connections currently using Hardy as a server. The client can process these messages (or ignore them). If Hardy were to be used as a user interface to some other client package, the client could call Hardy functions through the DDE interface (or via a program called *DDEPIPE* which allows non-DDE aware UNIX applications to access DDE programs using simple commands). The client could wait for ADVISE messages back (for example when a custom menu item was selected), and then do further processing or call additional Hardy functions.

hardy-command-int-to-string

long (**hardy-command-int-to-string** *long* **command_id**)

Converts an integer command identifier into a command name, such as HardyExit or DiagramCut.

hardy-command-string-to-int

long (**hardy-command-string-to-int** *string* **command_name**)

Converts a command name, such as HardyExit or DiagramCut, into the integer identifier form.

hardy-get-browser-frame

long (**hardy-get-browser-frame**)

Returns the integer id of the Hardy card browser frame, which can then be passed to GUI functions such as **window-show**.

This is only different from the top level frame if Hardy is running under Windows MDI mode, where the top level frame encloses other frames and the browser window is a separate child frame.

hardy-get-top-level-frame

long (**hardy-get-top-level-frame**)

Returns the integer id of the top level Hardy frame, which can then be passed to GUI functions such as **window-show**.

hardy-get-version

double (**hardy-get-version**)

Returns a floating-point number representing the version of Hardy that the application code is currently running under.

hardy-path-search

string (**hardy-path-search** *string* **filename**)

Searchs the current Hardy path list for the given file, and if it exists, returns the full pathname. Hardy builds up a list of paths as files become known to it; so sometimes Hardy will load files that do not have absolute paths, which CLIPS programs would not find without this function.

Returns the empty string if the file is not found.

hardy-help-display-block

long (**hardy-help-display-block** *long* **block_id**)

The given block is displayed. It is best to call **hardy-help-load-file** before this call. It is probably better to use section numbers than block numbers, unless a block other than a section must be displayed.

The value 1 is returned if successful, otherwise 0.

hardy-help-display-contents

long (**hardy-help-display-contents**)

The contents (first section) is displayed. It is best to call **hardy-help-load-file** before this call.

The value 1 is returned if successful, otherwise 0.

hardy-help-display-section

long (**hardy-help-display-section** *long* **section**)

The given section (numbered 1 upwards) is displayed. It is best to call **hardy-help-load-file** before this call.

The value 1 is returned if successful, otherwise 0.

hardy-help-keyword-search

long (**hardy-help-keyword-search** *string* **keyword**)

Performs a keyword search on section titles. If more than one matching title is found, the search dialog is displayed; otherwise, that section is displayed.

hardy-help-load-file

long (**hardy-help-load-file** *string* **file**)

If wxHelp is not currently running, it is executed. The named file is then loaded if it is an absolute path, or found in the current directory, or found in a directory mentioned in the WXHELPFILES or PATH directories.

If the file is already loaded into wxHelp, it is not reloaded, and therefore this function can (and should) always be called before attempting to display a section or block, since the user may have loaded another file.

Note that there is no function to quit the help system programmatically; wxHelp will be closed when Hardy closes, except under Windows where there is only one copy of wxHelp active at a time.

The value 1 is returned if successful, otherwise 0.

hardy-send-command

long (**hardy-send-command** *long* **command_id**)

Sends a menu command identifier to the Hardy main window. *command_id* is an internal identifier that can be obtained from an equivalent string form using *hardy-command-int-to-string* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

This function can be used in custom code to provide features that the default user interface normally provides.

See *Menu command identifiers* (page 158) for a list of identifiers you can use in conjunction with this function.

hardy-set-about-string

long (**hardy-set-about-string** *string* **about_string**)

Sets the text for the 'About box' invoked from the main window's Help menu.

hardy-set-author

long (**hardy-set-author** *string* **author**)

Sets the custom author name.

hardy-set-custom-help-file

long (**hardy-set-custom-help-file** *string* **file**)

Sets the filename for the custom help file. The name should have no extension (so an appropriate format will be used for the platform). This is the file used in the main window's Help menu.

hardy-set-help-file

long (**hardy-set-help-file** *string* **file**)

Sets the filename for the normal Hardy help file. The name should have no extension (so an appropriate format will be used for the platform). This is the file used in the Hardy-specific menus and dialog boxes; it might be overidden for a heavily customised version of the tool.

hardy-set-name

long (**hardy-set-name** *string* **name**)

Sets the custom tool name (default is "Hardy").

hardy-set-title

long (**hardy-set-title** *string* **title**)

Sets the custom tool title (default is "Hardy"). Used in the main window title bar.

object-is-valid

long (**object-is-valid** *long* **card_id**, *long* **object_id**)

Given a card id and an object id (a diagram node, arc or image id), returns 1 if the object exists and 0 otherwise.

quit

long (**quit** *int* **quit_level**)

Quits from Hardy, return 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

Action depends on value of quit_level:

0: full user prompting,
1: save everything and quit without prompting,
2: don't save anything and quit without prompting.

register-event-handler

long (**register-event-handler** *string* **event_type**,*string* **context**, *word* **function_name**)

Registers interest in a given Hardy event for the given card type.*context* may be one of:

1. "Toplevel",
2. "Text card",
3. any valid diagram type,
4. any valid hypertext type.

The function name specifies a valid function whose arguments, when called by Hardy, will vary according to the event type, but which will usually start with the card id.

Top level events recognised:

Exit Called when Hardy is about to exit, after all cards and the index have been saved (assuming the user did not veto these saves). The function has no arguments but returns an integer, which is 0 to veto the exit command or 1 to confirm the exit.
CustomMenu When the user selects a custom menu item on the top level control window,

the named function will be called with one argument: the *menu item string* that the user selected. At present there is no user interface to edit the top-level custom menu; edit **diagrams.def** with a text editor and insert (for example):

```
custom(custom_menu_name = "&Custom options",
custom_menu_strings = ["&First item", "&Second item"]).
```

OnCreateMenuBar Register this event to create a custom main menu. The function is called with no arguments, and should create and return a wxCLIPS menu bar, or zero to allow the default menu bar to be created.

OnCreateToolBar Register this event to create a custom main window toolbar (Windows only). The function is called with the frame identifier, and should create and return a panel or canvas, or zero to allow the default toolbar to be created. The initial height of the returned window will be used to determine sizing, and the width will be made to fit the main window.

OnHardyInit Called after Hardy initialisation has taken place. It is called with no arguments, and must return 1 for Hardy to continue running. Returning 0 terminates the session. Depending on the underlying window system, it may or may not be possible to minimize or hide the main window at this point. If your custom code needs to start running on startup, use this event to start it, rather than at CLIPS loading time which will not allow the initialisation to terminate.

OnMenuCommand Called when the user selects an option on the main window. It is called with an integer identifier representing the command, and the function should return 0 to veto normal processing, or 1 to perform the default action.

OnPreparePrinting See *Windows printing event handlers* (page 146).

OnPrintPage See *Windows printing event handlers* (page 146).

OnGetPageInfo See *Windows printing event handlers* (page 146).

For diagram cards, the event type may be:

AddArcAnnotation Called when the user adds an annotation to an arc, with arguments *card id, node image id, annotation id, annotation name, drop site name*. If the user function returns 0, the annotation is vetoed. Returning 1 lets the annotation addition take place.

AddNodeAnnotation Called when the user adds an annotation to a node, with arguments *card id, node image id, annotation id, annotation name, drop site name*. If the user function returns 0, the annotation is vetoed. Returning 1 lets the annotation addition take place.

ArcLeftClick Called when the arc is left-clicked, with arguments *card id, arc image id, x, y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*. If the user function returns 0, the default left click action is not performed. Returning 1 lets the default behaviour take place.

ArcMoveControlPoint Called when a control point is moved on this arc, or an attached node is moved. The callback is invoked with the arguments*card id, arc type, arc image id, control point, x, y*. The control point id is an integer greater than or equal to zero.

ArcRightClick Called when the arc is right-clicked, with arguments *card id, arc image id, x, y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*. If the user function returns 0, the default right click action is not performed. Returning 1 lets the default behaviour take place.

AttributesUpdated When the user has finished editing attributes for a node or arc, this is called with arguments *card id*, *object id* and *object type*. Note that this is only called, once, when the user closes the standard attribute editor, and not at any time.

AttributeModifiedPre This is called as a 'daemon' just before an attribute is changed, either by the user or programmatically. If the value is the same as the old, the function will not be called. The function is called with arguments *card id*, *object id*, *attribute name*, *old value*, *new value*. If the function returns 0, the modification will be vetoed: the function must return 1 to allow the update.

AttributeModifiedPost This is called as a 'daemon' just after an attribute is changed, either by the user or programmatically. If the value is the same as the old, the function will not be called. The function is called with arguments *card id*, *object id*, *attribute name*, *old value*, *new value*. The function should return no value.

ContainerAddPost This is called after a node image has been added to a division. The function is called with arguments *card id*, *parent image id*, *child image id*, *division image id*.

ContainerAddPre This is called when a node image is about to be added to a division. The function should return 0 to veto, or 1 to allow the containment operation. The function is called with arguments *card id*, *parent image id*, *child image id*, *division image id*.

ContainerRemovePost This is called after a node image has been removed from a division. The function is called with arguments *card id*, *parent image id*, *child image id*, *division image id*.

ContainerRemovePre This is called when a node image is about to be removed from a division. The function should return 0 to veto, or 1 to allow the containment operation. The function is called with arguments *card id*, *parent image id*, *child image id*, *division image id*.

CreateCard After diagram card creation, the named function is called with one argument: the *card id*. Note that this does not get called when a card is loaded, only when the card is created interactively.

CustomMenu When the user selects a custom menu item, the named function will be called with two arguments: the *card id* and the *menu item string* that the user selected. Use the diagram type manager to specify a custom menu for a particular diagram type.

DeleteArcAnnotation Called when the user deletes an arc annotation, with arguments *card id, arc image id, annotation id*. If the user function returns 0, the annotation deletion is vetoed. Returning 1 lets the annotation deletion take place.

DeleteCard Just before diagram card deletion, the named function is called with one argument: the *card id*. The function should return an integer, 0 to veto the delete (may be overriden by Hardy) and 1 to continue.

DeleteNodeAnnotation Called when the user deletes a node annotation, with arguments *card id, arc image id, annotation id*. If the user function returns 0, the annotation deletion is vetoed. Returning 1 lets the annotation deletion take place.

CanvasLeftClick Called when the mouse is left-clicked on the card canvas. The function's arguments are *card id, x, y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*. Return 0 to veto normal processing, 1 otherwise.

CanvasRightClick Called when the mouse is mouse-clicked on the card canvas. The function's arguments are *card id, x, y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*. Return 0 to veto normal processing, 1 otherwise.

CreateNodeImage After node image creation, the named function is called with three arguments: *card id, image id, node type*. Note that this does not get called when a diagram is loaded, only when images are created interactively.

CreateNodeImagePre After node image creation, the named function is called with three arguments: *card id, image id, node type*. The difference between this function and CreateNodeImage is that the function must return 0 or 1. If 0 is returned, Hardy deletes the image, otherwise normal processing continues. Note that this does not get called when a diagram is loaded, only when images are created interactively.

CreateArcImage After arc image creation, the named function is called with three arguments: *card id, image id, arc type*. Note that this does not get called when a diagram is loaded, only when images are created interactively.

CreateArcImagePre After arc image creation, the named function is called with three arguments: *card id, image id, arc type*. The difference between this function and CreateArcImage is that the function must return 0 or 1. If 0 is returned, Hardy deletes the image, otherwise normal processing continues. Note that this does not get called when a diagram is loaded, only when images are created interactively.

DeleteNodeImage Just before node image deletion, the function is called with arguments *card id, image id, node type*. Arcs are not accessible at this point.

DeleteNodeImage Just before node image deletion, the function is called with arguments *card id, image id, node type*. Arcs are still accessible at this point.

DeleteNodeImagePost Just after node image deletion, the function is called with arguments *card id, image id, node type*. *image id* is invalid at this point.

DeleteArcImage Just before arc image deletion, the function is called with arguments *card id, image id, arc type*.

DeleteArcImagePost Just after arc image deletion, the function is called with arguments *card id, image id, arc type*. *image id* is invalid at this point.

LoadDiagram When a diagram has just been loaded, the function is called with the card id as argument.

NodeMovePre Called when the node is moved but before it is redrawn, with arguments *card id, node image id, x, y, old x, old y*. Returning 1 lets the default behaviour take place; returning 0 vetoes the move.

NodeMovePost Called when the node is moved, after it is redrawn, with arguments *card id, node image id, x, y, old x, old y*. Return 1 from this function.

NodeLeftClick Called when the node is left-clicked, with arguments *card id, node image id, x, y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*. If the user function returns 0, the default left click action is not performed. Returning 1 lets the default behaviour take place.

NodeRightClick Called when the node is right-clicked, with arguments *card id, node image id, x, y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*. If the user function returns 0, the default right click action is not performed. Returning 1 lets the default behaviour take place.

OnCreateMenuBar Register this event to create a custom card menu. The function is called with the card identifier, and should create and return a wxCLIPS menu bar, or zero to allow the default menu bar to be created.

OnCreateToolBar Register this event to create a custom card toolbar (Windows only). The function is called with the Hardy card identifer and wxCLIPS frame identifier, and should create and return a panel or canvas, or zero to allow the default toolbar to be created. The initial height of the returned window will be used to determine sizing, and the width will be made to fit the card window.

OnMenuCommand Called when the user selects an option on the card. It is called with a card id, and an integer identifier representing the command. The function should return 0 to veto normal processing, or 1 to perform the default action.

RightDragCanvasToCanvas Called when the mouse is right-dragged from somewhere on the canvas, and released on another part of the canvas. The function's arguments are *card id, initial x, initial y, final x, final y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*.

RightDragCanvasToNode Called when the mouse is right-dragged from somewhere on the canvas, and released on a node image. The function's arguments are *card id, node image id, node attachment, x, y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*.

RightDragNodeToCanvas Called when the mouse is right-dragged from a node image, and released on the canvas. The function's arguments are *card id, node image id, node attachment, x, y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*. *x* and *y* represent the position of the mouse when released.

RightDragNodeToNode Called when the mouse is right-dragged from a node image and released on another node image. The function's arguments are *card id, first node image id, first node attachment, second node image id, second node image attachment, x, y, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*. *x* and *y* represent the position of the mouse when released. This function must return 1 to let processing continue, or 0 to override normal Hardy behaviour.

SaveDiagram When a diagram is about to be saved, the function is called with the card id as argument. If the function returns 1, saving continues; if 0 is returned, saving is aborted.

SelectNodeImage Called after a node image has been selected or deselected, either by the user or programmatically. The function is called with three arguments: *card id, image id, selection flag (0 or 1)*. No value need be returned.

SelectArcImage Called after an arc image has been selected or deselected, either by the user or programmatically. The function is called with three arguments: *card id, image id, selection flag (0 or 1)*. No value need be returned.

For hypertext cards, the event types may be:

CreateCard After hypertext card creation, the named function is called with one argument: the *card id.* Note that this does not get called when a card is loaded, only when the card is created interactively.

DeleteCard Just before hypertext card deletion, the named function is called with one argument: the *card id*. The function should return an integer, 0 to veto the delete (may be overriden by Hardy) and 1 to continue.

BlockLeftClick Called when a block is left-clicked, with arguments *card id, block id, character position, line number, shift pressed (1 or 0)* and *control pressed (1 or 0)*. If the user function returns 0, the default left click action is not performed. Returning 1 lets the default behaviour take place. A block id of -1 indicates a click on unmarked text.

BlockRightClick Called when a block is right-clicked, with arguments *card id, block id, character position, line number, shift pressed (1 or 0), control pressed (1 or 0)*. If the user function returns 0, the default left click action is not performed. Returning 1 lets the default behaviour take place. A block id of -1 indicates a click on unmarked text.

CustomMenu When the user selects a custom menu item, the named function will be called with two arguments: the *card id* and the *menu item string* that the user selected. Use the hypertext type manager to specify a custom menu for a particular hypertext type.

OnCreateMenuBar Register this event to create a custom card menu. The function is called with the card identifier, and should create and return a wxCLIPS menu bar, or zero to allow the default menu bar to be created.

OnMenuCommand Called when the user selects an option on the card. It is called with the card id, and an integer identifier representing the command. The function should return 0 to veto normal processing, or 1 to perform the default action.

OnCreateToolBar Register this event to create a custom card toolbar (Windows only). The function is called with the Hardy card identifer and wxCLIPS frame identifier, and should create and return a panel or canvas, or zero to allow the default toolbar to be created. The initial height of the returned window will be used to determine sizing, and the width will be made to fit the card window.

For media cards, the event type may be:

CustomMenu When the user selects a custom menu item, the named function will be called with two arguments: the *card id* and the *menu item string* that the user selected. Use the diagram type manager to specify a custom menu for a particular diagram type.

OnCreateMenuBar Register this event to create a custom card menu. The function is called with the card identifier, and should create and return a wxCLIPS menu bar, or zero to allow the default menu bar to be created.

OnCreateToolBar Register this event to create a custom card toolbar (Windows only). The function is called with the Hardy card identifer and wxCLIPS frame identifier, and should create and return a panel or canvas, or zero to allow the default toolbar to be created. The initial height of the returned window will be used to determine sizing, and the width will be made to fit the card window.

OnMenuCommand Called when the user selects an option on the card. It is called with a card id, and an integer identifier representing the command. The function should return 0 to veto normal processing, or 1 to perform the default action.

BlockLeftClick Called when a block is left-clicked. Takes card, block id, position, shift (1 or 0), control (1 or 0). Return 0 to veto default event processing, 1 otherwise.

BlockRightClick Called when a block is right-clicked. Takes card, block id, position, shift (1 or 0), control (1 or 0). Return 0 to veto default event processing, 1 otherwise.

CustomMenu Called when a custom menu item is invoked. Takes card and menu item name.

12.22. Menu command identifiers

Most of the menu commands that the user can issue have names which can be used by custom code which replaces the default menu bars. When responding to the OnMenuCommand event for the main window or cards, custom code can call *hardy-send-command* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) or *card-send-command* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to invoke standard functionality. These functions, and the OnMenuCommand event handler, take integer command arguments, so you will need to use *hardy-command-int-to-string* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) and *hardy-command-string-to-int* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to send or test commands.

In order to avoid confusion with Hardy integer identifiers, please note that replacement main window or card menu bar integer identifiers should start from at least 800.

The following sections list the menu command names.

12.22.1. Hardy main window commands

- HardyBrowseFiles
- HardyClearIndex
- HardyConfigure
- HardyDeselectAllItems
- HardyDrawTree
- HardyExit
- HardyFindOrphans
- HardyHelpAbout
- HardyHelpContents
- HardyHelpSearch
- HardyLoadApplication
- HardyLoadFile
- HardyPrint
- HardyPrintPreview
- HardyPrintSetup
- HardySaveFile
- HardySaveFileAs
- HardySearchCards
- HardyShowArcSymbolEditor
- HardyShowDevelopmentWindow
- HardyShowDiagramManager
- HardyShowHypertextManager
- HardyShowNodeSymbolEditor
- HardyShowPackageTool
- HardyShowSymbolLibrarian
- HardyViewTopCard

12.22.2. Generic card commands

- CardDeleteAllLinks
- CardGotoControlWindow

- CardDelete
- CardDeleteLink
- CardEditTitle
- CardEditFilename
- CardLinkNewCard
- CardLinkToSelection
- CardOpenFile
- CardOrderLinks
- CardSaveFile
- CardSaveFileAs
- CardSelectItem
- CardToggleLinkPanel
- CardQuit

12.22.3. Diagram card commands

- DiagramAddAnnotation
- DiagramAddControl
- DiagramApplyDefinition
- DiagramBrowse
- DiagramChangeFont
- DiagramClearAll
- DiagramCopy
- DiagramCopyDiagram
- DiagramCopySelection
- DiagramCopyToClipboard
- DiagramCut
- DiagramDeleteAnnotation
- DiagramDeleteControl
- DiagramDeselectAll
- DiagramDuplicateSelection
- DiagramEditOptions
- DiagramFormatGraph
- DiagramFormatText
- DiagramFormatTree
- DiagramGotoRoot
- DiagramHelp
- DiagramHorizontalAlign
- DiagramHorizontalAlignTop
- DiagramHorizontalAlignBottom
- DiagramNewExpansion
- DiagramPaste
- DiagramPrint
- DiagramPrintAll
- DiagramPrintEPS
- DiagramPrintPreview
- DiagramRefresh
- DiagramSaveBitmap
- DiagramSaveMetafile
- DiagramSelectAll
- DiagramStraighten

- DiagramToBack
- DiagramToFront
- DiagramTogglePalette
- DiagramToggleToolbar
- DiagramVerticalAlign
- DiagramVerticalAlignLeft
- DiagramVerticalAlignRight
- DiagramZoom30
- DiagramZoom40
- DiagramZoom50
- DiagramZoom60
- DiagramZoom70
- DiagramZoom80
- DiagramZoom90
- DiagramZoom100

12.22.4. Hypertext card commands

- HypertextClearAllBlocks
- HypertextClearBlock
- HypertextClearSelection
- HypertextDeleteLinks
- HypertextEditOptions
- HypertextHelp
- HypertextNextSection
- HypertextPreviousSection
- HypertextRunEditor
- HypertextTop

12.22.5. Text card commands

- TextCopy
- TextCut
- TextHelp
- TextPaste
- TextRunEditor

13. wxCOOL class reference

See also *wxCOOL overview* (page 357)

This is the reference for the wxCOOL classes. With these functions, it is possible to create special-purpose user interfaces independent of platform. Currently these capabilities are supported under MS Windows, Open Look and Motif, except where stated.

13.1. wxApplication is-a wxObject

Not yet implemented.

One object of this class can be created, and its implementation depends upon the C++ application hosting the wxCLIPS environment.

wxApplication on-char-hook

bool (**on-char-hook wxKeyEvent** *event*)

Under Windows only, all key strokes going to a dialog box or frame can be intercepted before being passed on for normal processing. This function takes the window id and event id, and should return 1 to override further processing, or 0 to do default processing. If the function returns 0, the on-char-hook message will be sent to the active window. See also *Key event* (page 283).

13.2. wxBitmap is-a wxObject

A bitmap is a rectangular array of pixels, possibly in colour. A bitmap can be created in memory, or loaded from an XBM file under X, or BMP file under Windows.

A bitmap can be drawn on a canvas by selecting it into a *wxMemoryDC* (page 201) object and using *dc-blit* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**). Bitmaps can also be used to create buttons; see *button-create-from-bitmap* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

wxBitmap bitmap-type

string bitmap-type

Indicates the type of bitmap file the bitmap is being loaded from.

May be one of:

- wxBITMAP_TYPE_BMP: Windows BMP (the default under Windows).
- wxBITMAP_TYPE_XBM: X monochrome bitmap (the default under X).
- wxBITMAP_TYPE_GIF: GIF bitmap (only under X).
- wxBITMAP_TYPE_XPM: XPM colour bitmap (under Windows and X if wxCLIPS has been compiled to include this option).
- wxBITMAP_TYPE_RESOURCE: Windows resource bitmap; unlikely to be used since the resources compiled into wxCLIPS cannot be changed from CLIPS.

wxBitmap depth

long depth

The depth of the bitmap (number of bits per pixel). Optionally intialize this if creating an in-memory bitmap; omitting it makes the depth default to the current display depth of the screen.

wxBitmap filename

string filename

If this slot is initialized on creation, the wxBitmap will be created from the given file. The slot *bitmap-type* must also be initialized, to indicate the type of bitmap file.

Defaults to the empty string.

wxBitmap height

long height

The height of the bitmap. Intialize this if creating an in-memory bitmap.

wxBitmap width

long width

The width of the bitmap. Intialize this if creating an in-memory bitmap.

wxBitmap create

void (**create**)

Creates a bitmap in memory, either blank or from an existing bitmap file. The programmer can draw into the bitmap by selecting it into a memory device context, for later drawing on an output device context such as a canvas device context.

The method of bitmap construction depends on the slots that are initialized when the instance is created. Here are some examples:

```
; Load from a BMP file
(make-instance [my-bitmap] of wxBitmap
  (filename "aiai.bmp") (bitmap-type "wxBITMAP_TYPE_BMP"))

; Create a 'blank' bitmap
(make-instance [my-bitmap] of wxBitmap
   (width 100) (height 100))
```

13.3. wxBrush is-a wxObject

A brush is a an object that can be set for a *device context* (page 258) and determines the fill colour and style for subsequent drawing operations.

See also *wxPen* (page 212).

wxBrush colour

string colour

The colour of the brush. It may be a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK", "WHITE", "CYAN" etc.

wxBrush style

symbol style

The style of the brush. It may be one of:

- wxSOLID (the default)
- wxTRANSPARENT
- wxBDIAGONAL_HATCH
- wxCROSSDIAG_HATCH
- wxFDIAGONAL_HATCH
- wxCROSS_HATCH
- wxHORIZONTAL_HATCH
- wxVERTICAL_HATCH

wxBrush create

void (**create**)

Creates a brush for use in a device context. A brush must be set to fill graphic shapes.

The following slots must be initialized:

- *colour* is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK", "CYAN").
- *style* may be a value such as wxSOLID or wxTRANSPARENT (see *style* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) for complete list).

13.4. wxButton is-a wxItem

A wxButton is a rectangular control which can be placed on a *wxPanel* (page 209) to invoke a command.

wxButton bitmap

wxBitmap bitmap

The bitmap associated with a wxButton, if being used as a bitmap button.

wxButton create

void (**create**)

Creates a label or bitmap button on the given panel. If the *bitmap* slot is initialized, the button will be created from the bitmap. Otherwise, a text button will be created, using *label* for the label.

The following slots may be used in initializing a wxButton instance:

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this button.
- *label*: for a text label button, must be a string.
- *bitmap*: for a bitmap label button, must be a wxBitmap.

When the button is pressed, the on-command message will be sent to the wxButton; if there is no default handler, it will be passed to the wxButton's parent, and then to the parent's parent. See *wxCommandEvent* (page 168) for a list of event types associated with wxCommandEvent.

13.5. wxCanvas is-a wxWindow

A subwindow used for drawing arbitrary graphics. It must be the child of a *wxFrame* (page 191).

wxCanvas dc

wxCanvasDC dc

The device context handle belonging to the canvas. The device context must be retrieved before anything can be drawn on the canvas. If your drawing function is parameterized by a device context, you will be able to pass other types of device context to your drawing routine, such as PostScript and Windows metafile device contexts.

wxCanvas create

bool (**canvas-create**)

Creates a canvas for drawing graphics on. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxFrame.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this canvas.
- *style*: may be absent or a string style: see below.

The value of **style** can be a *bit list* of the following values:

wxBORDER	Gives the canvas a thin border (Windows 3 and Motif only).
wxRETAINED	Gives the canvas a wxWindows-implemented backing store, making repainting much faster but at a potentially costly memory premium (XView and Motif only).
wxBACKINGSTORE	Gives the canvas an X-implemented backing store (XView and Motif

only). The X server may choose to ignore this request, whereas wxRETAINED is always implemented under X.

wxCanvas set-scrollbars

bool (**set-scrollbars long** *x-unit-size* **long** *y-unit-size*
long *x-length* **long** *y-length* **long** *x-page-length* **long** *y-page-length*)

Set the scrollbars for the given canvas. The first argument pair specifies the number of pixels per logical scroll unit, that is, the number of pixels to scroll when a scroll arrow is clicked. If either is zero or less, that scrollbar will not appear. The second pair specifies the size of the virtual canvas in logical scroll units. The third pair of arguments specify the number of scroll units per page, that is, the amount to scroll by when the scrollbar is page-scrolled (usually by clicking either side of the scrollbar handle).

wxCanvas scroll

bool (**scroll long** *x-position* **long** *y-position*)

Scroll the canvas programmatically to the given scroll position. To convert from pixel position to scroll position, divide the pixel position by the scroll unit size you passed to *set-scrollbars* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

wxCanvas on-char

void (**on-char wxKeyEvent** *event*)

Allows interception of key events. See also *wxKeyEvent* (page 197).

wxCanvas on-event

void (**on-event wxMouseEvent***event*)

Allows interception of mouse events. See also *wxMouseEvent* (page 206).

wxCanvas on-paint

void (**on-paint**)

Override this handler to respond to paint events (sent when the canvas needs repainting).

wxCanvas on-size

void (**on-size long** *width* **long***height*)

The function is called with the canvas width and height when the canvas is resized.

13.6. wxCheckBox is-a wxItem

A wxCheckBox is a small box with a label, and can be in one of two states. It must be the child of a *wxPanel* (page 209).

wxCheckBox value

bool value

The value of the checkbox (TRUE or FALSE).

wxCheckBox create

void (**create**)

Creates a checkbox on the given panel. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this item.
- *label*: may be absent or a string name to label this item.
- *style*: reserved for future use.
- *value*: TRUE or FALSE.

13.7. wxChoice is-a wxItem

A wxChoice item is similar to a single-selection *wxListBox* (page 198) but normally only the current selection is displayed. It must be the child of a *wxPanel* (page 209).

wxChoice values

multifield values

List of string values for initializing the wxChoice item.

wxChoice create

bool (**wxChoice create**)

Creates a choice item on the given panel. A choice consists of a list of strings, one of which may be selected and displayed at any one time. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.

- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this item.
- *label*: may be absent or a string name to label this item.
- *style*: reserved for future use.
- *values*: a multifield list of strings.

Note that under Motif, it is recommended that the values are passed in this function, rather than using *append*, because of the nature of Motif. Otherwise, things are likely to be messed up.

wxChoice append

bool (**append string** *item*)

Appends the string item to the choice.

wxChoice find-string

long (**find-string string** *item*)

Searches for the given string and if found, returns the position ID of the string.

wxChoice clear

bool (**clear**)

Clears all the strings from the choice item.

wxChoice get-selection

long (**get-selection**)

Get the ID of the string currently selected.

wxChoice get-string-selection

string (**get-string-selection**)

Get the string currently selected.

wxChoice set-selection

bool (**set-selection long** *item-id*)

Sets the choice selection to the given item ID (numbered from zero).

wxChoice set-string-selection

bool (**set-string-selection string** *item*)

Sets the selection by passing the appropriate item string.

wxChoice get-string

string (**get-string long** *item-id*)

Gets the string associated with the given item ID.

13.8. wxClient is-a wxObject

See also *Interprocess communication overview* (page 343)

Not yet tested.

A client object represents the client side of a DDE conversation.

wxClient create

void (**create**)

Creates a client object. You should override the on-make-connection handler to return an object of class derived from wxConnection, since various members of wxConnection must be overridden to intercept messages.

A connection is not made until *make-connection* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) is called.

wxClient make-connection

wxConnection (**make-connection string** *host* **string** *service* **string** *topic*)

Makes a connection to a server, returning an object of a user-defined derivative of *wxConnection* (page 169)if successful.

host is ignored under Windows, and should contain a valid internet host name under X.

service is a DDE service identifier (under X should contain a socket identifier).

topic is a topic name for this connection.

wxClient on-make-connection

wxConnection (**on-make-connection**)

Should be overridden to return an object of the appropriate wxConnection class, whenever a connection is made. The base wxConnection class cannot be used because various members of wxConnection must be overridden in order to respond to messages from the server.

13.9. wxCommandEvent is-a wxEvent

A wxCommandEvent is passed to a message handler when a panel item command is issued (usually by a user action).

The command event types are as follows:

- **wxEVENT_TYPE_BUTTON_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_CHECKBOX_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_CHOICE_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_LISTBOX_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_TEXT_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_TEXT_ENTER_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_MULTITEXT_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_MENU_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_SLIDER_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_RADIOBOX_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_SET_FOCUS**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_KILL_FOCUS**

wxCommandEvent get-selection

long (**get-selection**)

Returns the identifier selection corresponding to the selected item, for example a listbox or menu item.

wxCommandEvent is-selection

bool (**is-selection**)

Returns 1 if the event was a selection event, 0 otherwise.

13.10. wxConnection is-a wxObject

Not yet tested.

See also *Connection overview* (page 344)

A wxConnection object has no creation function, since it is implicitly created when a connection is requested (one object at each side of the connection).

A connection object is used for initiating DDE commands and requests using functions such as execute, and it also has message handlers associated with it to respond to commands from the other side of the connection.

wxConnection service-name

string service-name

Service name variable.

wxConnection advise

bool (**advise string** *item* **string** *data*)

Called by a server application to pass data to a client (for example, when a spreadsheet cell has been updated, and the client is interested in this value).

item is the name of the item, and *data* is a string representing the item's data.

Returns TRUE if successful, FALSE otherwise.

wxConnection execute

bool (**wxConnection execute string** *data*)

Called by a client application to execute a command in the server. Note there is no item in this command.

data is a string representing the item's data.

Returns TRUE if successful, FALSE otherwise.

To get a result from a server, you need to call *request* explicitly, since *execute* doesn't return data.

wxConnection disconnect

bool (**disconnect**)

Called by a client or server application to terminate this connection. After this call, the connection object is no longer valid.

Returns TRUE if successful, FALSE otherwise.

wxConnection poke

bool (**poke string** *item* **string** *data*)

Called by a client application to poke data into the server.

item is the name of the item, and *data* is a string representing the item's data.

Returns TRUE if successful, FALSE otherwise.

wxConnection request

string (**request string** *item*)

Called by a client application to request data from a server.

item is the name of the requested data item.

Returns a string representing the data if successful, the empty string otherwise.

wxConnection start-advise

bool (**start-advise string** *item*)

Called by a client application to indicate interest in a particular piece of data in a server. The client connection should then recieve OnAdvise messages when the data is updated in the server.

item is the name of the data item of interest.

Returns TRUE if the advise loop is allowed, FALSE otherwise.

wxConnection stop-advise

bool (**stop-advise string** *item*)

Called by a client application to indicate a termination of interest in a particular piece of data in a server.

item is the name of the data item of interest.

Returns TRUE if successful, FALSE otherwise.

wxConnection on-advise

bool (**on-advise string** *topic* **string** *item* **string** *data*)

Called on the client side of the connection, when the server side sends an *advise* message. Used for advising the client of a change in server data. Override this to intercept such messages.

wxConnection on-execute

bool (**on-execute string** *topic* **string** *data*)

Called on the server side of the connection, when the client side sends an *execute* message. Used for implementing commands on the server side. Override this to implement command execution; you might wish to store the last result(s) to be returned when the client sends a *request* message.

wxConnection on-poke

bool (**on-poke string** *topic* **string** *item* **string** *data*)

Called on the server side of the connection, when the client side sends a *poke* message. Used for poking data into a server. Override this to intercept such messages.

wxConnection on-request

string (**on-request string** *topic* **string** *item*)

Called on the server side of the connection, when the client side sends a *request* message. Used for getting information from a server. Override this to intercept such messages and return data back to the client.

wxConnection on-start-advise

bool (**on-start-advise string** *topic* **string** *item*)

Called on the server side of the connection, when the client side wishes to start an *advise* loop for the given topic and item. The server should respond with TRUE to accept this advise loop, FALSE otherwise.

wxConnection on-stop-advise

bool (**on-stop-advise string** *topic* **string** *item*)

Called on the server side of the connection, when the client side wishes to stop an *advise* loop for the given topic and item. The server should respond with TRUE to terminate this advise loop, FALSE otherwise.

13.11. wxCursor is-a wxBitmap

A cursor is a small bitmap used for representing the mouse pointer. It can be set for a particular subwindow, using *wxWindow set-cursor* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), as a cue for what operations are possible in this window at this point in time.

wxCursor cursor-name

string cursor-name

A stock cursor name, one of the following:

- wxCURSOR_ARROW
- wxCURSOR_BULLSEYE
- wxCURSOR_CHAR
- wxCURSOR_CROSS
- wxCURSOR_HAND
- wxCURSOR_IBEAM
- wxCURSOR_LEFT_BUTTON
- wxCURSOR_MAGNIFIER
- wxCURSOR_MIDDLE_BUTTON
- wxCURSOR_NO_ENTRY
- wxCURSOR_PAINT_BRUSH
- wxCURSOR_PENCIL
- wxCURSOR_POINT_LEFT
- wxCURSOR_POINT_RIGHT
- wxCURSOR_QUESTION_ARROW
- wxCURSOR_RIGHT_BUTTON

- wxCURSOR_SIZENESW
- wxCURSOR_SIZENS
- wxCURSOR_SIZENWSE
- wxCURSOR_SIZEWE
- wxCURSOR_SIZING
- wxCURSOR_SPRAYCAN
- wxCURSOR_WAIT
- wxCURSOR_WATCH
- wxCURSOR_BLANK
- wxCURSOR_CROSS_REVERSE (X only)
- wxCURSOR_DOUBLE_ARROW (X only)
- wxCURSOR_BASED_ARROW_UP (X only)
- wxCURSOR_BASED_ARROW_DOWN (X only)

wxCursor x

long x

The cursor hotspot x position (used only when loading a cursor from a file).

wxCursor y

long y

The cursor hotspot y position (used only when loading a cursor from a file).

wxCursor create

void (**create**)

Creates either a stock cursor (if *cursor-name* is non-nil) or a cursor loaded from a disk file (if *filename* and *bitmap-type* are non-nil).

Under X, the permitted cursor types in *bitmap-type* are:

- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_XBM** Load an X bitmap file

Under Windows, the permitted types are:

- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_CUR** Load a cursor from a .cur cursor file (only if USE_RESOURCE_LOADING_IN_MSW is enabled in wx_setup.h).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_CUR_RESOURCE** Load a Windows resource (as specified in the .rc file).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_ICO** Load a cursor from a .ico icon file (only if USE_RESOURCE_LOADING_IN_MSW is enabled in wx_setup.h). Specify *x* and *y* slot values.

Examples:

```
; Create a stock cursor
(bind ?cursor (make-instance (gensym*)
     of wxCursor (cursor-name "wxCURSOR_PENCIL")))

  ; Create a cursor from a .cur file
  (bind ?cursor (make-instance (gensym*)
     of wxCursor (filename "figure.cur") (bitmap-type
"wxBITMAP_TYPE_CUR")))

  ; Create a cursor from a .ico file
  (bind ?cursor (make-instance (gensym*)
     of wxCursor (filename "figure.icor") (bitmap-type
"wxBITMAP_TYPE_CUR")
                 (x 10) (y 10)))
```

13.12. wxDatabase is-a wxObject

See also *Database classes overview* (page 349)

Not yet implemented.

Every database object represents an ODBC connection. The connection may be closed and reopened.

wxDatabase close

bool (**close**)

Resets the statement handles of any associated recordset objects, and disconnects from the current data source.

wxDatabase create

long (**database-create**)

Creates a new ODBC database handle. The constructor of the first wxDatabase instance of an application initializes the ODBC manager.

wxDatabase delete

bool (**delete**)

Destructor. Resets and destroys any associated wxRecordSet instances.

The destructor of the last wxDatabase instance will deinitialize the ODBC manager.

wxDatabase error-occurred

bool (**error-occurred**)

Returns 1 if the last action caused an error.

wxDatabase get-database-name

string (**get-database-name**)

Returns the name of the database associated with the current connection.

wxDatabase get-data-source

string (**get-data-source**)

Returns the name of the connected data source.

wxDatabase get-error-code

string (**wxDatabase get-error-code**)

Returns the error code of the last ODBC function call. This will be a string containing one of:

SQL_ERROR	General error.
SQL_INVALID_HANDLE	An invalid handle was passed to an ODBC function.
SQL_NEED_DATA	ODBC expected some data.
SQL_NO_DATA_FOUND	No data was found by this ODBC call.
SQL_SUCCESS	The call was successful.
SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO	The call was successful, but further information can be obtained from the ODBC manager.

wxDatabase get-error-message

string (**get-error-message**)

Returns the last error message returned by the ODBC manager.

wxDatabase get-error-number

long (**get-error-number**)

Returns the last native error. A native error is an ODBC driver dependent error number.

wxDatabase is-open

bool (**is-open**)

Returns 1 if a connection is open.

wxDatabase open

bool (**open string** *datasource* **optional long** *exclusive = 1* **optional string** *readonly = 1* **optional string** *username = "ODBC"* **optional string** *password = ""*)

Connect to a data source. *datasource* contains the name of the ODBC data source. The parameters *exclusive* and *readonly* are not used.

13.13. wxDate is-a wxObject

A class for manipulating dates.

Not yet implemented.

wxDate add-months

bool (**add-months long** *months*)

Adds the given number of months to the date, returning TRUE if successful.

wxDate add-weeks

bool (**add-weeks long** *weeks*)

Adds the given number of weeks to the date, returning TRUE if successful.

wxDate add-years

bool (**add-years long** *years*)

Adds the given number of months to the date, returning TRUE if successful.

wxDate create

void (**create**)

Constructs a date object, initialized to zero. You are responsible for deleting this object when you have finished with it.

void (**create long** *month* **long** *day* **long** *year*)

Constructs a date object with the specified date. You are responsible for deleting this object when you have finished with it.

month is a number from 1 to 12.

day is a number from 1 to 31.

year is a year, such as 1995, 2005.

wxDate create-julian

bool (**create-julian long** *julian*)

Constructor taking an integer representing the Julian date.

wxDate create-string

bool (**wxDate create-string string** *date*)

Constructor taking a string representing a date. This must be either the string TODAY, or of the form `MM/DD/YYYY` or `MM-DD-YYYY`. For example:

```
    (make-instance (gensym*) (date-string "11/26/1966"))
```

wxDate format

string (**format**)

Formats the date into a string according to the current display type.

wxDate get-day

long (**get-day**)

Returns the numeric day (in the range 1 to 365).

wxDate get-day-of-week

long (**get-day-of-week**)

Returns the integer day of the week (in the range 1 to 7).

wxDate get-day-of-week-name

string (**day-of-week-name**)

Returns the name of the day of week.

wxDate get-day-of-year

long (**get-day-of-year**)

Returns the day of the year (from 1 to 365).

wxDate get-days-in-month

long (**get-days-in-month**)

Returns the number of days in the month (in the range 1 to 31).

wxDate get-first-day-of-month

long (**get-first-day-of-month**)

Returns the day of week that is first in the month (in the range 1 to 7).

wxDate get-julian-date

long (**get-julian-date**)

Returns the Julian date.

wxDate get-month

long (**get-month**)

Returns the month number (in the range 1 to 12).

wxDate get-month-end

long (**get-month-end**)

Returns a new date representing the day that is last in the month. The new date must be deleted when it is finished with.

wxDate get-month-name

string (**get-month-name**)

Returns the name of the month.

wxDate get-month-start

wxDate (**get-month-start**)

Returns a new date representing the first day of the month. The new date must be deleted when it is finished with.

wxDate get-week-of-month

long (**get-week-of-month**)

Returns the week of month (in the range 1 to 6).

wxDate get-week-of-year

long (**get-week-of-year**)

Returns the week of year (in the range 1 to 52).

wxDate get-year

long (**get-year**)

Returns the year as an integer (such as '1995').

wxDate get-year-end

wxDate (**get-year-end**)

Returns a new date the date representing the last day of the year. Delete the new date when you have finished with it.

wxDate get-year-start

wxDate (**get-year-start**)

Returns a new date the date representing the first day of the year. Delete the new date when you have finished with it.

wxDate is-leap-year

bool (**is-leap-year**)

Returns TRUE if the year of this date is a leap year.

wxDate set

bool (**set**)

Sets the date to current system date.

wxDate set-julian

bool (**set-julian long** *julian*)

Sets the date to the given Julian date.

wxDate set-date

bool (**set-date long** *month* **long** *day* **long** *year*)

Sets the date to the given date.

month is a number from 1 to 12.

day is a number from 1 to 31.

year is a year, such as 1995, 2005.

wxDate set-format

bool (**set-format string** *format*)

Sets the current format type.

format should be one of:

wxDAY	Format day only.
wxMONTH	Format month only.
wxMDY	Format MONTH, DAY, YEAR.
wxFULL	Format day, month and year in US style: DAYOFWEEK, MONTH, DAY, YEAR.
wxEUROPEAN	Format day, month and year in European style: DAY, MONTH, YEAR.

wxDate set-option

bool (**set-option string** *option* **long** *enable=1*)

Enables or disables an option for formatting. *option* may be one of:

wxNO_CENTURY	The century is not formatted.
wxDATE_ABBR	Month and day names are abbreviated to 3 characters when formatting.

wxDate add-days

wxDate (**add-days long** *days*)

Adds an integer number of days to the date, returning a new date object.

wxDate subtract-days

wxDate (**subtract-days long** *days*)

Subtracts an integer number of days from the date, returning a new date object.

wxDate subtract

long (**subtract long** *date1* **long** *date2*)

Subtracts one date from another, return the number of intervening days.

wxDate add-self

bool (**add-self long** *days*)

Adds an integer number of days to the date, returning TRUE if successful.

wxDate subtract-self

bool (**subtract-self long** *days*)

Subtracts an integer number of days from the date, returning TRUE if successful.

wxDate le

bool (**lelong** *date*)

Compare two dates, returning TRUE if the current date object is earlier than *date*.

wxDate leq

bool (**leq long** *date*)

Function to compare two dates, returning TRUE if the current date object is earlier or equal to *date*.

wxDate ge

bool (**ge long** *date*)

Function to compare two dates, returning TRUE if the current date object is later than *date*.

wxDate geq

dboollong (**geq long** *date*)

Function to compare two dates, returning TRUE if the current date object is later than or equal to *date*.

wxDate eq

bool (**eq long** *date*)

Function to compare two dates, returning TRUE if the current date object is equal to *date*.

wxDate neq

bool (**neq long** *date*)

Function to compare two dates, returning TRUE if the current date object is not equal to *date*.

13.14. wxDC is-a wxObject

See also *Overview* (page 346)

A wxDC (device context) is an abstraction of a surface that can be drawn onto.

The following functions can be used with any device context identifier, with the exception of blit which must not be used with a PostScript device context, and get-text-extent-width, get-text-extent-height which do not function correctly on PostScript or metafile device contexts.

wxDC begin-drawing

bool (**begin-drawing**)

Bracket a series of drawing primitives in begin-drawing and end-drawing to optimize drawing under Windows, and also if drawing to a panel or dialog box context, for which these calls are mandatory. The calls may be nested.

wxDC blit

bool (**blit double** *dest-x* **double** *dest-y* **double** *width* **double** *height* **wxDC** *source-dc* **double** *source-x* **double** *source-y* **string** *logical-op = "wxCOPY"*)

Block-copies the given area from a source device context to a destination device context (the current object). This operation is not available to PostScript and Windows Metafile destination device contexts.

The argument *logical-op* sets the current logical function for the canvas. This determines how a source pixel from the source device context combines with a destination pixel in the current device context. It will most commonly be "wxCOPY", which simply draws with the current source pixels.

The possible values and their meaning in terms of source and destination pixel values are as follows:

`wxAND`	`src AND dst`
`wxAND_INVERT`	`(NOT src) AND dst`
`wxAND_REVERSE`	`src AND (NOT dst)`
`wxCLEAR`	`0`
`wxCOPY`	`src`
`wxEQUIV`	`(NOT src) XOR dst`
`wxINVERT`	`NOT dst`
`wxNAND`	`(NOT src) OR (NOT dst)`
`wxNOR`	`(NOT src) AND (NOT dst)`
`wxNO_OP`	`dst`
`wxOR`	`src OR dst`

`wxOR_INVERT`	`(NOT src) OR dst`
`wxOR_REVERSE`	`src OR (NOT dst)`
`wxSET`	`1`
`wxSRC_INVERT`	`NOT src`
`wxXOR`	`src XOR dst`

The most commonly used is wxCOPY. The others combine the current colour and the background using a logical operation. wxXOR is commonly used for drawing rubber bands or moving outlines, since drawing twice reverts to the original colour.

wxDC clear

bool (**wxDC clear**)

Clears the device context using the background colour.

wxDC destroy-clipping-region

bool (**destroy-clipping-region**)

Destroys the current clipping region.

wxDC draw-ellipse

bool (**draw-ellipse double** *x* **double** *y* **double** *width* **double** *height*)

Draws an ellipse. The outline and filling attributes are determined by the pen and brush settings respectively.

wxDC draw-line

bool (**draw-line double** *x1* **double** *y1* **double** *x2* **double** *y2*)

Draws a line between the given points.

wxDC draw-lines

bool (**draw-lines multifield** *list*)

Draws lines between the given points. *list* is a multifield, which can be created by a call to mv-append and a list of arguments. The list must contain an even number of floating-point values, interpreted in pairs as the points determining the multiline.

wxDC draw-point

bool (**dc-draw-point double** *x* **double** *y*)

Draws a point.

wxDC draw-polygon

bool (**draw-polygon multifield** *list*)

Draws a (possibly filled) polygon. *list* is a multifield, which can be created by a call to mv-append and a list of arguments. The list must contain an even number of floating-point values, interpreted in pairs as the points determining the polygon. The outline and filling attributes are determined by the pen and brush settings respectively.

wxDC draw-rectangle

bool (**draw-rectangle double** *x* **double** *y* **double** *width* **double** *height*)

Draws a rectangle. The outline and filling attributes are determined by the pen and brush settings respectively.

wxDC draw-rounded-rectangle

bool (**draw-rounded-rectangle double** *x* **double** *y* **double** *width* **double** *height* **double** *radius*)

Draws a rounded rectangle, with corners with a specified radius (optional). The outline and filling attributes are determined by the pen and brush settings respectively.

wxDC draw-text

bool (**dc-draw-text string** *text* **double** *x* **double** *y*)

Draw text at the given position, using the font set by *set-font* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), and using the colours set by *set-text-foreground* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) and *set-text-background* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) respectively.

wxDC draw-spline

bool (**draw-spline multifield** *list*)

Draws a spline curve. *list* is a multifield, which can be created by a call to mv-append and a list of arguments. The list must contain an even number of floating-point values, interpreted in pairs as the points determining the spline shape.

wxDC end-doc

bool (**end-doc**)

Ends a document (such as a PostScript or Windows printer document).

wxDC end-drawing

bool (**end-drawing**)

Bracket a series of drawing primitives in begin-drawing and end-drawing to optimize drawing under Windows, and also if drawing to a panel or dialog box context, for which these calls are mandatory. The calls may be nested.

wxDC end-page

bool (**end-page**)

Ends a page.

wxDC get-min-x

double (**get-min-x**)

Returns the minimum X value drawn so far on the device context.

wxDC get-min-y

double (**get-min-y**)

Returns the minimum Y value drawn so far on the device context.

wxDC get-max-x

double (**get-max-x**)

Returns the maximum X value drawn so far on the device context.

wxDC get-max-y

double (**get-max-y**)

Returns the maximum Y value drawn so far on the device context.

wxDC get-text-extent-height

double (**get-text-extent-height string** *text*)

Returns the height of the text as drawn on this device context, in logical units.

wxDC get-text-extent-width

double (**get-text-extent-width string** *text*)

Returns the width of the text as drawn on this device context, in logical units.

wxDC ok

bool (**ok**)

Returns TRUE if the device context is OK (usually meaning, it has been initialised correctly), and FALSE otherwise.

wxDC start-doc

bool (**start-doc string** *message*)

Starts a document (such as a PostScript or Windows printer document) using the given string for any associated message box (the message is not in fact currently used).

wxDC start-page

bool (**start-page**)

Starts a page.

wxDC set-background

bool (**set-background long** *brush*)

Sets the background brush.

wxDC set-background-mode

bool (**set-background-mode string** *mode*)

Sets the mode for drawing text background.

mode may be wxSOLID (use the text background colour) or wxTRANSPARENT (do not fill the background).

wxDC set-brush

bool (**set-brush wxBrush** *brush*)

Sets the current brush for the device context. *brush* is a *wxBrush* (page 162) object, or nil t select any existing brush out of the device context.

wxDC set-colourmap

bool (**set-colourmap wxColourMap** *cmap*)

Sets the colourmap for the device context. If *cmap* is nil, the original colourmap is restored so that it is safe to delete the device context (or colourmap).

wxDC set-clipping-region

bool (**set-clipping-region double** *x1* **double** *y1* **double** *x2* **double** *y2*)

Sets a rectangular clipping region, outside which drawing operations have no effect.

wxDC set-font

bool (**set-font long** *font*)

Sets the current font for the device context. *font* is a *wxFont* (page 190) object, or nil to select any existing font out of the device context.

wxDC set-logical-function

bool (**set-logical-function string** *logical-function*)

Sets the current logical function for the device context. The logical function determines how pixels are changed by the drawing functions, and may be one of wxCOPY, wxXOR, wxINVERT, wxOR_REVERSE and wxAND_REVERSE.

wxDC set-pen

bool (**set-pen long** *pen*)

Sets the current pen for the device context. *pen* is a *wxPen* (page 212) object, or nil to select any existing pen out of the device context.

wxDC set-text-foreground

bool (**set-text-foreground string** *colour*)

Sets the colour for the text foreground, effective when *draw-text* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) is used. *colour* is a capitalized name from the list defined in the wxWindows manual.

wxDC set-text-background

bool (**set-text-background string** *colour*)

Sets the colour for the text background, effective when *draw-text* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) is used. *colour* is a capitalized name from the list defined in the wxWindows manual.

13.15. wxDialogBox is-a wxPanel

See also *Overview* (page 346)

A dialog box is essentially a *wxPanel* (page 209) with its own *wxFrame* (page 191), and therefore shares some functions and behaviour with both of these objects.

Any panel item can be created as a child of a dialog box, and also the dialog box can be created *modal*, so that the flow of program control halts until the dialog box is dismissed.

The following event handlers are valid for the panel class:

on-command Override this to intercept panel item commands (such as button presses). See *wxCommandEvent* (page 168) for a list of event types associated with wxCommandEvent.
on-event Called with a *wxMouseEvent* (page 206) identifier. This can only be guaranteed only when the dialog box is in user edit mode (to be implemented).
on-paint Called with no arguments when the dialog box receives a repaint event from the window manager.
on-size The function is called with the window width and height.

wxDialogBox modal

bool modal

Initialize to TRUE if the dialog box is to be modal, FALSE otherwise. The default is FALSE.

wxDialogBox create

void (**create**)

The following slots may be initialized if not loading from a resource.

- *parent*: should be a wxFrame or wxDialogBox.
- *title*: a title for the dialog box caption.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this dialog box.
- *modal*: TRUE if the dialog is to be modal, FALSE otherwise (the default).
- *style*: may be absent or a string style: see below.

The following slots should be initialized if loading from a resource (see *Resource overview* (page 359) for further details).

- *parent*: should be a wxFrame.
- *resource*: the string name of the resource.

The value of **style** can be a *bit list* of the following values:

wxCAPTION	Puts a caption on the dialog box (under XView and Motif this is mandatory).
wxSTAY_ON_TOP	Stay on top of other windows (Windows only).
wxSYSTEM_MENU	Display a system menu (manadatory under XView and Motif).
wxTHICK_FRAME	Display a thick frame around the window (manadatory under XView and Motif).

wxVSCROLL	Give the dialog box a vertical scrollbar (XView only).
wxDEFAULT_DIALOG_STYLE	Equivalent to a combination of wxCAPTION, wxSYSTEM_MENU and wxTHICK_FRAME .

The default value for *style* is wxDEFAULT_DIALOG_STYLE.

If *modal* is TRUE, when the *show* message is sent to the dialog box object, the flow of control will stop until the *show* message has been called again with a FALSE parameter. Otherwise, if *modal* is FALSE, flow of control will immediately return to the program when the dialog box has been shown.

wxDialogBox on-char-hook

bool (**on-char-hook wxKeyEvent** *event*)

Under Windows only, all key strokes going to a dialog box or frame can be intercepted before being passed on for normal processing. This handler takes the event object, and should return TRUE to override further processing, or FALSE to do default processing. See also *wxKeyEvent* (page 197).

wxDialogBox on-close

bool (**on-close**)

The function is called when the user dismisses the dialog box. If the handler returns TRUE, the window is automatically deleted (possibly terminating the application). A return value of FALSE forbids automatic deletion.

wxDialogBox on-paint

void (**on-paint**)

Override this handler to respond to paint events (sent when the dialog box needs repainting). Normally, a dialog box's items repaint themselves, but for special purposes, you may wish to draw on the dialog box device context.

wxDialogBox on-size

void (**on-size long** *width* **long***height*)

The function is called with the dialog box width and height when the user resizes the frame.

13.16. wxEvent is-a wxObject

wxEvent is an 'abstract class' from which other event classes, such as mouse, key and command events, are derived.

wxEvent get-event-type

string (**get-event-type**)

Returns the event type.

13.17. wxEvtHandler is-a wxObject

wxEvtHandler is an 'abstract class' for classes which have event handlers, such as wxCanvas or wxFrame. This class has yet to be documented.

13.18. wxFont is-a wxObject

A font is an object that can be set for a *device context* (page 258) to determine the characteristics of text drawn with *draw-text* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**). It can also be used to set panel item fonts.

wxFont point-size

long point-size

The point size of the font. The default is 10.

wxFont family

symbol family

The family of the font. May be one of wxROMAN, wxSCRIPT, wxDECORATIVE, wxSWISS, wxMODERN. The default is wxSWISS.

wxFont style

symbol style

The style of the font. May be one of wxNORMAL, wxITALIC, wxSLANT. The default is wxNORMAL.

wxFont weight

symbol weight

The weight of the font. May be one of wxNORMAL, wxLIGHT, wxBOLD. The default is wxNORMAL.

wxFont underlined

bool underlined

Whether the font is underlined (Windows only). May be TRUE of FALSE. The default is FALSE.

wxFont create

void (**create**)

Creates a font for use in a device context. The following slots can be used to initialize the font.

- *point-size* gives the font point size.
- *family* may be one of wxROMAN, wxSCRIPT, wxDECORATIVE, wxSWISS, wxMODERN, wxDEFAULT.
- *style* may be one of wxNORMAL, wxITALIC, wxSLANT.
- *weight* may be one of wxBOLD, wxLIGHT, wxNORMAL.
- *underlined* may be 1 or 0.

13.19. wxFrame is-a wxWindow

A wxFrame is a window containing text, canvas or panel subwindows. It normally has decorations added by the window manager, such as a system menu, a thick frame, and resize handles. When a wxWindows or wxCLIPS application initializes, a top-level frame must be returned to the system for successful start-up. When a top-level frame and all its children are deleted, the application terminates.

Usually an application will need to override the on-close handler in case the window manager sends the application a close message. If the handler returns TRUE, the frame is deleted by the system (possibly terminating the application).

See *wxWindow* (page 231) for message handlers in addition to the ones documented here.

wxFrame create

void (**create**)

The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxFrame.
- *title*: a title for the dialog box caption.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this dialog box.
- *style*: may be absent or a string style: see below.

The style parameter may be a combination of the following, using the bitwise 'or' operator.

wxICONIZE	Display the frame iconized (minimized) (Windows only).
wxCAPTION	Puts a caption on the frame (under XView and Motif this is mandatory).
wxDEFAULT_FRAME	Defined as a combination of wxMINIMIZE_BOX, wxMAXIMIZE_BOX, wxTHICK_FRAME, wxSYSTEM_MENU and wxCAPTION.
wxMDI_CHILD	Specifies a Windows MDI (multiple document interface) child frame.
wxMDI_PARENT	Specifies a Windows MDI (multiple document interface) parent frame.
wxMINIMIZE	Identical to **wxICONIZE**.
wxMINIMIZE_BOX	Displays a minimize box on the frame (Windows only).
wxMAXIMIZE	Displays the frame maximized (Windows only).

wxMAXIMIZE_BOX	Displays a maximize box on the frame (Windows only).
wxSDI	Specifies a normal SDI (single document interface) frame.
wxSTAY_ON_TOP	Stay on top of other windows (Windows only).
wxSYSTEM_MENU	Displays a system menu (manadatory under XView and Motif).
wxTHICK_FRAME	Displays a thick frame around the window (manadatory under XView and Motif).

The function *show* must be called before a new frame is visible.

wxFrame create-status-line

bool (**create-status-line optional long** *n=1*)

Creates a status line at the bottom of the frame. Use *set-status-text* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to write to the status line.

n is a number from 1 to 5 for the number of status areas to create.

wxFrame iconize

bool (**iconize optional bool** *minimize*)

Minimizes the frame if the second argument is TRUE or absent, restores the frame otherwise.

wxFrame set-menu-bar

bool (**set-menu-bar wxMenuBar** *menu-bar*)

Associates a menu bar with the frame. See *wxMenuBar* (page 203). You should not call this more than once for any given frame, and you should also not delete the wxMenuBar object once it has been assigned to a frame. It will be deleted when the wxFrame object is deleted.

wxFrame set-icon

bool (**set-icon wxIcon** *icon*)

Sets the icon of a frame. See *wxIcon* (page 196).

wxFrame set-status-text

bool (**set-status-text string** *text*, **optional long** *i=0*)

Sets the text for the status line (previously created with *create-status-line* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)).

i is a number from 0 to 4 for the number of the status area to write to.

wxFrame set-title

bool (**set-title string** *text*)

Set the title of a frame.

wxFrame set-tool-bar

bool (**set-tool-bar long** *toolbar*)

Tells the MDI frame to manage the subwindow as a toolbar. Use in Windows MDI mode *only*.

wxFrame on-activate

void (**on-activate bool** *active*)

Called the frame is activated or deactivated. Under Windows, you may need to intercept this message and set the focus for a subwindow, or the subwindow may not receive character events. By default, wxWindows will set the focus for the first subwindow of a frame.

wxFrame on-char-hook

bool (**on-char-hook wxKeyEvent** *event*)

Under Windows only, all key strokes going to a dialog box or frame can be intercepted before being passed on for normal processing. This handler takes the event object, and should return TRUE to override further processing, or FALSE to do default processing. See also *wxKeyEvent* (page 197).

wxFrame on-close

bool (**on-close**)

The function is called when the user dismisses the frame. If the handler returns TRUE, the window is automatically deleted (possibly terminating the application). A return value of FALSE forbids automatic deletion.

wxFrame on-menu-command

void (**on-menu-command long** *menu-item*)

Called with the menu item identifier. Test the menu item identifier and perform an appropriate action.

wxFrame on-menu-select

void (**on-menu-select long** *menu-item*)

Called with a menu item identifier, when the cursor travels over the menu item (but the user does not click). Test the menu item identifier and perform an appropriate action.

wxFrame on-size

void (**on-size long** *width* **long***height*)

The function is called with the frame width and height when the user resizes the frame. The application should define appropriate subwindow resizing behaviour in this handler, if appropriate.

The default handler performs child window resizing behaviour if there is only one child window. Otherwise, it gives up.

13.20. wxHelpInstance is-a wxObject

Not yet implemented.

A 'help instance' is created to manage on-line help associated with one or more files. wxCLIPS supports both Windows Help under MS Windows, and wxHelp under all platforms.

Windows Help (.hlp) files may be created using a number of tools, such as Tex2RTF. wxHelp (.xlp) files can be created with a text editor or a tool such as Tex2RTF.

wxHelp is very limited in its capabilities and should only be used on platforms with no native help. Consider using HTML files instead (although you cannot currently access HTML files from your application).

wxHelpInstance native

bool native

If TRUE, the native help system will be invoked (such as WinHelp under MS Windows). If FALSE, wxHelp will be invoked.

wxHelpInstance create

void (**create**)

Creates a help instance. If *native* is TRUE, the native help system will be invoked (such as WinHelp under MS Windows). If FALSE, wxHelp will be invoked.

wxHelpInstance display-block

bool (**display-block long** *blockId*)

Displays the help file at the given block identifier (system dependent).

wxHelpInstance display-contents

bool (**display-contents string** *filename*)

Displays the contents of the help file currently loaded.

wxHelpInstance display-section

bool (**display-section long** *section*)

Displays the help file at the given section (system dependent).

wxHelpInstance keyword-search

bool (**keyword-search string** *keyword*)

Positions the help file at a section matching the given string.

wxHelpInstance load-file

bool (**load-file string** *filename*)

Attempts to load the given file into the help instance. Use a function like display-contents to display the file.

13.21. wxGauge is-a wxItem

A gauge is used for displaying a quantity, for example amount of processing done. It must be a child of a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.

wxGauge value

long value

The current value of the gauge. The default is 1.

wxGauge range

long range

The range of the gauge. The default is 100.

wxGauge create

void (**create**)

Creates a gauge item on the given panel. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.

- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this item.
- *label*: may be absent or a string name to label this item.
- *style*: a bit list of values (see below).
- *value*: TRUE or FALSE.
- *range*: indicates the maximum value of the gauge.

style is a *bit list* of the following:

wxGA_HORIZONTAL	The item will be created as a horizontal gauge.
wxGA_VERTICAL	The item will be created as a vertical gauge.
wxGA_PROGRESSBAR	Under Windows 95, the item will be created as a horizontal progress bar.

wxGauge set-bezel-face

bool (**set-bezel-face long** *width*)

Set the bezel parameter of the gauge (takes effect under Windows version only).

wxGauge set-shadow-width

bool (**set-shadow-width long** *width*)

Set the shadow width of the gauge (takes effect under Windows version only).

13.22. wxGroupBox is-a wxItem

A wxGroupBox is a box drawn around one or more controls. Available under Windows only.

wxGroupBox create

void (**create**)

Creates a group box. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this item.
- *label*: may be absent or a string name to label this item.
- *style*: reserved for future use.

13.23. wxIcon is-a wxBitmap

An icon is a small bitmap which can be used to decorate a minimized frame. There are platform-specific ways of creating an icon.

wxIcon height

long height

Height of the icon in pixels.

wxIcon width

long width

Width of the icon in pixels.

wxIcon create

void (**create**)

Loads an icon from a file or resource. Under X, the argument must be the filename of a valid XBM (X bitmap) file. Under Windows, the argument must be a icon filename, or the name of an icon resource compiled into the current executable.

Use *wxFrame set-icon* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to set the icon of a frame.

Under X, the permitted icon types in the *bitmap-type* are:

- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_BMP** Load a Windows bitmap file (if USE_IMAGE_LOADING_IN_X is enabled in wx_setup.h).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_GIF** Load a GIF bitmap file (if USE_IMAGE_LOADING_IN_X is enabled in wx_setup.h).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_XBM** Load an X bitmap file.
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_XPM** Load an XPM (colour pixmap) file. Only available if USE_XPM_IN_X is enabled in wx_setup.h.

Under Windows, the permitted types are:

- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_ICO** Load a cursor from a .ico icon file (only if USE_RESOURCE_LOADING_IN_MSW is enabled in wx_setup.h).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_ICO_RESOURCE** Load a Windows resource (as specified in the .rc file).

Examples:

```
; Under X
(bind ?icon (make-instance (gensym*)
   (bitmap-type wxBITMAP_TYPE_XBM)
   (filename "icon.xbm")))

; Under Windows
(bind ?icon (make-instance (gensym*)
   (bitmap-type wxBITMAP_TYPE_ICO)
   (filename "icon.ico")))
```

13.24. wxKeyEvent is-a wxEvent

A key event identifier is passed to a window's on-char or on-char-hook handler. The key code, position and state of shift/control/alt can be examined by calling the following functions.

wxKeyEvent alt-down

bool (**alt-down**)

Returns TRUE if alt was pressed.

wxKeyEvent control-down

bool (**control-down**)

Returns TRUE if control was pressed.

wxKeyEvent get-key-code

string (**get-key-code**)

Returns a string corresponding to the internal wxWindows key code, such as "WXK_BACK", "WXK_F1" or "WXK_RETURN".

wxKeyEvent position-x

double (**position-x**)

Gets the x position of the mouse pointer at the moment the key was pressed.

wxKeyEvent position-y

double (**event-position-y**)

Gets the y position of the mouse pointer at the moment the key was pressed.

wxKeyEvent shift-down

bool (**shift-down**)

Returns TRUE if shift was pressed.

13.25. wxListBox is-a wxItem

A wxListBox displays a choice of strings. It must be the child of a panel or dialog box. In a single-selection listbox, only one choice may be highlighted. In a multiple-selection listbox, several may be highlighted.

wxListBox values

multifield values

List of string values for initializing the wxListBox item.

wxListBox multiple

bool multiple

Initalize to TRUE for a multi-selection listbox, FALSE for a single-selection listbox.

wxListBox create

void (**create**)

Creates a list box item on the given panel or dialog box. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this item.
- *label*: may be absent or a string name to label this item.
- *style*: see below.
- *values*: a multifield list of strings.
- *multiple*: TRUE for a multiple-selection listbox, FALSE otherwise.

style is a *bit list* of some of the following:

wxNEEDED_SB	Create scrollbars if needed.
wxALWAYS_SB	Create scrollbars immediately.
wxHSCROLL	Create horizontal scrollbar if contents are two wide (Windows only).

wxListBox append

bool (**append string** *item* **optional string** *client-data*)

Append a string to the list box, with an optional client data string.

wxListBox find-string

long (**find-string string** *item*)

Find the string in the list box and return the integer position if found, -1 if not.

wxListBox clear

bool (**clear**)

Clear all strings from the list box.

wxListBox get-selection

long (**get-selection**)

Get the position of the selection (for single-selection list boxes only).

wxListBox get-string-selection

string (**get-string-selection**)

Get the selected string (for single-selection list boxes only).

wxListBox set-selection

bool (**set-selection long** *item-pos* **bool** *flag=TRUE*)

Set a selection by item position.

If *flag* is TRUE, the item will be selected, otherwise it will be deselected (multiple-selection listboxes only).

wxListBox set-string-selection

bool (**set-string-selection string** *item*)

Set a selection by string.

wxListBox number

long (**number**)

Return the number of items in the list box.

wxListBox delete-item

bool (**delete-item long** *item-pos*)

Delete an item in the list box.

wxListBox get-string

string (**get-string long** *item-pos*)

Return the string at the given position.

wxListBox get-first-selection

long (**get-first-selection**)

Get the first selection position in a multi-selection list box (-1 for no more selections).

wxListBox get-next-selection

long (**get-next-selection**)

Get the next selection position in a multi-selection list box (-1 for no more selections).

13.26. wxMemoryDC is-a wxCanvasDC

A memory device context is used for drawing into, or copying from, a bitmap. See also the *wxBitmap* (page 161) object.

wxMemoryDC create

void (**create**)

Create a memory device context using the current display depth. No slots need to be initialized.

wxMemoryDC select-object

bool (**select-object wxBitmap** *bitmap*)

Makes this device context the drawing surface for the given bitmap (see *wxBitmap* (page 161)). Deleting the memory device context disassociates the bitmap, freeing it to be used with another memory device context. To draw a bitmap on a device context that supports bitmap drawing (i.e. not a Metafile or PostScript device context), using code like the following:

```
  ;;; Utility function for drawing a bitmap
  (deffunction draw-bitmap (?dc ?bitmap ?x ?y)
   (bind ?mem-dc (make-instance (gensym*) of wxMemoryDC))
   (send ?mem-dc select-object ?bitmap)
   ; Blit the memory device context onto the destination device context
   (send ?dc blit ?x ?y (send ?bitmap get-width) (send ?bitmap get-
height)
     ?mem-dc 0.0 0.0)
   (send ?mem-dc delete)
  )
```

If *bitmap* is nil, the existing bitmap (if any) will be selected out of the device context. This might be necessary if you wish to delete the bitmap before deleting the device context (for example, for reusing the same device context for different bitmaps).

13.27. wxMenu is-a wxWindow

The menu is used as a component of a *wxMenuBar* (page 203) or as a popup menu. For a menu bar, create menus, append menu items (strings, separators or further menus), and finally append the menu to the menu bar.

A menu or menu bar string may contain an ampersand, which is taken to mean 'underline the next character and use it as the hotkey'. This gives the user the opportunity to use keystrokes to access menus and items.

wxMenu callback

symbol callback

This slot should be initialized if creating a popup menu. The name represents a function that will be called with the wxMenu instance and wxCommandEvent instance when the user selects an item. Use *wxCommandEvent get-selection* to retrieve the selected menu item id.

wxMenu create

void (**create**)

Create a menu and returns the menu's ID. The following slots may be initialized.

- *callback*: should be present if creating a popup menu (i.e. not a menubar menu). It will be called with the wxMenu instance and wxCommandEvent instance when the user selects an item. Use *wxCommandEvent get-selection* to retrieve the selected menu item id.

wxMenu append

bool (**append long** *item-id*
string *item-string* **optional wxMenu** *submenu* **optional string** *help-string* **optional bool** *checkable*)

Append a string or submenu to the menu, passing the integer ID by which the menu item will be referenced, a string to be displayed, an optional pullright menu, and an optional flag for specifying whether this menu item can be checked.

A help string can be supplied, in which case the string will be shown on the first field of the status line (if any) in the frame containing the menu bar, when the mouse pointer moves over the menu item.

wxMenu append-separator

bool (**append-separator**)

Append a menu separator.

wxMenu break

bool (**break**)

Inserts a column break into the menu.

wxMenu check

bool (**check long** *item-id* **bool** *check*)

Check (*check = TRUE* or uncheck *check = FALSE* the given menu item. MS Windows only.

wxMenu enable

bool (**enable long** *item-id* **bool** *enable*)

Enable (*enable = TRUE* or disable *enable = FALSE* the given menu item.

13.28. wxMenuBar is-a wxWindow

A menu bar is a standard user interface element which places the main commands of an application along the top of a *wxFrame* (page 266).

The menu bar must be assigned to a frame using *wxFrame set-menu-bar* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**). Once this is done, the menu bar must not be deleted by the application: it will be deleted when the frame is deleted.

A menu or menu bar string may contain an ampersand, which is taken to mean 'underline the next character and use it as the hotkey'. This gives the user the opportunity to use keystrokes to access menus and items.

See also *wxMenu* (page 201).

wxMenuBar create

void (**create**)

Creates a menu bar.

wxMenuBar append

bool (**append long** *menu-id* **string** *title*)

Appends a menu to a menu bar.

wxMenuBar check

bool (**check long** *item-id* **bool** *check*)

Checks (*check = TRUE*) or unchecks (*check = FALSE*) the given menu item. MS Windows only.

wxMenuBar checked

bool (**checked long** *item-id*)

Returns TRUE if the menu item is checked, FALSE otherwise.

wxMenuBar enable

bool (**enable long** *item-id* **bool** *enable*)

Enables (*enable* = *TRUE*) or disables (*enable* = *FALSE*) the given menu item.

13.29. wxMessage is-a wxItem

A wxMessage is a simple piece of text, or a bitmap, on a panel or dialog box.

wxMessage bitmap

wxMessage bitmap

The bitmap associated with a wxMessage, if being used as a bitmap message.

wxMessage create

long (**create**)

Creates a label or bitmap message item on the given panel.

The following slots may be used in initializing a wxButton instance:

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this message.
- *label*: for a text label message, must be a string.
- *bitmap*: for a bitmap label message, must be a wxBitmap.

13.30. wxMetaFile is-a wxObject

Not yet implemented.

A metafile is the Windows vector format. Currently, the only way of creating a Windows metafile is to close a metafile device context, and the only valid operations are to delete the metafile and to place it on the clipboard.

These functions are only available under Windows.

13.30.1. Example

Below is a example of metafle, metafile device context and clipboard use. Note the way the metafile dimensions are passed to the clipboard, making use of the device context's ability to keep track of the maximum extent of drawing commands.

```
  (bind ?dc (make-instance (gensym*) of wxMetaFileDC))
  (if (send ?dc ok) then
   (
     ; Do some drawing
     (bind ?mf (send ?dc close))
     (if (neq ?mf nil) then
      ; Pass metafile to the clipboard
      (send ?md set-clipboard (send ?dc get-max-x) (send ?dc get-max-
y))
      (send ?mf delete)
     )
   )
  )
  (send ?dc delete)
```

wxMetaFile set-clipboard

bool (**wxMetaFile set-clipboard long** *width* **long** *height*)

Places the metafile on the clipboard, returning TRUE for success and FALSE for failure.

The metafile should be deleted immediately after this operation.

13.31. wxMetaFileDC is-a wxDC

A metafile device context is used for creating a metafile. The programmer should create the metafile device context, close it to return a metafile, delete the device context, use the metafile (the only valid thing to do with it currently is to place it on the clipboard, and then delete the metafile.

These functions are only available under Windows.

See also *wxMetaFile* (page 204).

wxMetaFileDC filename

string filename

Filename if creating this metafile device context as disk-based.

wxMetafileDC create

void (**create**)

Creates a metafile device context.

filename is the file to be used if creating a disk-based metafile. Usually this will be zero or absent, and an in-memory metafile will be created.

wxMetaFileDC close

wxMetaFile (**close**)

Closes the metafile device context and returns a metafile (or nil if the function failed). The device context should no longer be used after this call is made, and it should be deleted.

See *wxMetaFile* (page 204).

13.32. wxMouseEvent is-a wxEvent

A mouse event identifier is passed to the canvas on-event handler. The state of the mouse buttons (and some keys) can be examined by calling the following functions.

wxMouseEvent button

bool (**button long** *button*)

Returns TRUE if the given button is changing state. *button* may be 1, 2 or 3 (left, middle and right buttons respectively).

wxMouseEvent button-down

bool (**button-down**)

Returns TRUE if the event is a mouse button down event.

wxMouseEvent control-down

bool (**control-down**)

Returns TRUE if the control key is down.

wxMouseEvent dragging

bool (**dragging**)

Returns TRUE if the event is a dragging event (holding a mouse button down and moving).

wxMouseEvent left-down

bool (**left-down**)

Returns TRUE if the left mouse button is down.

wxMouseEvent left-up

bool (**left-up**)

Returns TRUE if the left mouse button is up.

wxMouseEvent is-button

bool (**is-button**)

Returns TRUE the event is a button press or release.

wxMouseEvent middle-down

bool (**middle-down**)

Returns TRUE if the middle mouse button is down.

wxMouseEvent middle-up

bool (**middle-up**)

Returns TRUE if the middle mouse button is up.

wxMouseEvent position-x

double (**position-x**)

Returns the mouse x-position.

wxMouseEvent position-y

double (**position-y**)

Returns the mouse y-position.

wxMouseEvent right-down

bool (**right-down**)

Returns TRUE if the right mouse button is down.

wxMouseEvent right-up

bool (**right-up**)

Returns TRUE if the right mouse button is up.

wxMouseEvent shift-down

bool (**shift-down**)

Returns TRUE if the shift key is down.

13.33. wxMultiText is-a wxText

A multi-line text item is able to show several lines of text, unlike the single line *wxText* (page 224) item. It must be the child of a panel or dialog box.

wxMultiText create

long (**create**)

Creates a multi-line text item on the given panel or dialog box. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this item.
- *label*: may be absent or a string name to label this item.
- *style*: see below.
- *value*: a string for initializing the value of the multi-text.

The *style* parameter can be a *bit list* of the following:

wxHSCROLL	A horizontal scrollbar will be displayed. If wxHSCROLL is omitted, only a vertical scrollbar is displayed, and lines will be wrapped. This parameter is ignored under XView.
wxREADONLY	The text is read-only (not XView).

13.34. wxObject

wxObject is an 'abstract class' from which other wxCOOL classes are derived.

wxObject dont-create

symbol dont-create

Set on creation when it is not desireable for the usual underlying object creation to occur. Specifically, used when creating objects to wrap wxCLIPS integer identifiers for panel items created when loading in a dialog or panel resource. See wx_item.clp, wxPanel handler create-child-objects.

wxObject id

long id

The integer identifier of the underlying wxCLIPS object.

wxObject pending-delete

bool pending-delete

TRUE if the object is about to be deleted (an internal setting to avoid double deletion).

wxObject add-event-handlers

void (**add-event-handlers**)

All classes should override (but still call) this handler in order to add callbacks for this instance. The wxObject version adds an OnDelete callback that will be called for all instances.

wxObject create

void (**create**)

For wxObject, this is a no-operation that must be redefined by derived classes to perform per-instance initialization.

wxObject init after

void (**init after**)

This handler is implemented to call the *create* handler after the slot initialization phase is complete. *create* is also defined for wxObject, as an no-operation, and must be redefined by each major subclass to do the construction for the instance.

13.35. wxPanel is-a wxCanvas

A panel is a subwindow for placing panel items, such as the *wxButton* (page 163) and *wxText* (page 224) item. Its parent must be a *wxFrame* (page 191). A panel inherits most properties from canvas, except for scrollbar functionality.

Note that a *wxDialogBox* (page 187) may be used in a similar way to a panel.

The following event handlers are valid for the panel class:

- **on-default-action** Override this to intercept double clicks in listboxes.
- **on-command** Override this to intercept panel item commands (such as button presses). See *wxCommandEvent* (page 168) for a list of event types associated with wxCommandEvent.
- **on-event** Called with a *wxMouseEvent* (page 206) identifier. This can only be guaranteed only when the panel is in user edit mode (to be implemented).
- **on-paint** Called with no arguments when the panel receives a repaint event from the window manager.
- **on-size** The function is called with the window width and height.

wxPanel resource

string resource

The name of the resource the panel or dialog is to be loaded from, if any. Initially the empty string.

wxPanel create

void (**create**)

Creates a panel.

The following slots may be initialized if not loading from a resource.

- *parent*: should be a wxFrame.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this pane;.
- *style*: may be absent or a string style: see below.

The following slots should be initialized if loading from a resource (see *Resource overview* (page 359) for further details).

- *parent*: should be a wxFrame.
- *resource*: the string name of the resource.

The *style* parameter may be a combination of the following, using the bitwise 'or' operator.

wxABSOLUTE_POSITIONING	A hint to the windowing system not to try native Windowing system layout (Motif only). This is the recommended style for all Motif panels and dialog boxes.
wxBORDER	Draws a thin border around the panel.
wxVSCROLL	Gives the dialog box a vertical scrollbar (XView only).

void (**on-default-action wxItem** *item*)

A panel receives this message in response to a double click in a listbox.

wxPanel on-command

void (**on-command wxItem** *item* **wxCommandEvent** *command-event*)

A panel or dialog box receives this message in response to a command (such as a button press), if the item has not overriden on-command. See *wxCommandEvent* (page 168) for a list of event types associated with wxCommandEvent.

wxPanel set-button-font

bool (**set-button-font wxFont** *font*)

Sets the font used for panel or dialog box item buttons (or contents). See also *set-label-font* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

wxPanel set-label-font

bool (**set-label-font wxFont** *font*)

Sets the font used for panel or dialog box item labels. See also *set-button-font* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

wxPanel set-label-position

bool (**set-label-position string** *position*)

Change the current label orientation for panel items: *position* may be wxVERTICAL or wxHORIZONTAL.

wxPanel new-line

bool (**new-line**)

Insert a new line, that is, make subsequent panel items appear at the start of the next line.

13.36. wxItem is-a wxWindow

A panel item is a control (or widget) that can be placed on a *wxPanel* (page 209) or *wxDialogBox* (page 187) to accept user input, and display information.

The following functions apply to panel items, which include *wxButton* (page 163), *wxCheckbox* (page 166), *wxChoice* (page 166), *wxMessage* (page 204), *wxText* (page 224), *wxMultiText* (page 208), *wxSlider* (page 223).

wxItem get-label

string (**get-label**)

Get the item's label.

wxItem on-command

void (**on-command wxItem** *item* **wxCommandEvent** *command-event*)

An item receives this message in response to a command (such as a button press). If this handler is not overriden, then on-command is sent to the item's parent panel. It is usually more convenient to override this handler for a panel rather than per panel item.

See *wxcommandevent* (page 168) for a list of event types associated with wxCommandEvent.

wxItem set-default

bool (**set-default**)

Make this item the default.

wxItem set-label

bool (**set-label string** *label*)

Set the item's label.

13.37. wxPen is-a wxObject

A pen is used to control the colour and style of subsequent drawing operations on a *device context* (page 258).

wxPen colour

string colour

The colour for initializing the wxPen.

wxPen style

symbol style

The style for initializing the wxPen. May be one of wxSOLID, wxDOT, wxLONG_DASH, wxSHORT_DASH, wxTRANSPARENT.

wxPen create

void (**create**)

Creates a pen for use in a device context. A pen is used for the outlines of graphic shapes. A brush must be set to fill the shapes.

The following slots may be initialized.

- *colour* is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK", "CYAN".
- *width* specifies the width of the pen.
- *style* may be one of wxSOLID, wxDOT, wxLONG_DASH, wxSHORT_DASH, wxTRANSPARENT.

13.38. wxPostScriptDC is-a wxDC

A wxPostScriptDC is used for drawing into a postscript file.

wxPostScriptDC filename

string filename

The filename associated with the device context.

wxPostScriptDC interactive

bool interactive

TRUE if the creation of the device context should pop up a printer dialog.

wxPostScriptDC window

wxWindow window

Initialize this to the parent window for any dialogs the device context will pop up. Defaults to nil.

wxPostScriptDC create

void (**create**)

Creates a postscript device context. The following slots may be initialized.

- *filename* is the file to be used for printing to.
- *interactive* may be TRUE to popup up a printer dialog, or FALSE otherwise.
- *window* is a parent window for the printer dialog.

13.39. wxPrinterDC is-a wxDC

A wxPrinterDC is used for drawing onto a Windows printer.

wxPrinterDC device

string device

The device name for this device context. Defaults to the empty string.

wxPrinterDC driver

string driver

The driver name for this device context. Defaults to the empty string.

wxPrinterDC filename

string filename

The filename associated with the device context, if printing to a file.

wxPrinterDC interactive

bool interactive

TRUE if the creation of the device context should pop up a printer dialog.

wxPrinterDC window

wxWindow window

Initialize this to the parent window for any dialogs the device context will pop up. Defaults to nil.

wxPrinter create

void (**create**)

Creates a printer device context. The following slots may be initialized.

- *device* is the Windows device name (defaults to the empty string).
- *driver* is the Windows printer driver name (defaults to the empty string).
- *filename* is the file to be used for printing to.
- *interactive* may be TRUE to popup up a printer dialog, or FALSE otherwise.

13.40. wxRadioBox is-a wxItem

A radiobox item is a matrix of strings with associated radio buttons. The buttons are mutually exclusive, so pressing one will deselect the current selection.

wxRadioBox major-dimension

long major-dimension

Specifies the number of rows (if style is wxVERTICAL) or columns (if style is wxHORIZONTAL) for a two-dimensional radiobox.

wxRadioBox values

multifield values

List of string values for initializing the wxRadioBox labels.

wxRadioBox create

void (**create**)

Creates a radiobox item on the given panel or dialog box. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this item.
- *label*: may be absent or a string name to label this item.
- *style*: A bit list of values (see below).
- *values*: a multifield list of strings for the radiobox labels.
- *major-dimension*: specifies the number of rows (if style is wxVERTICAL) or columns (if style is wxHORIZONTAL) for a two-dimensional radiobox.

style may be a *bit list* of:

wxVERTICAL	Lays the radiobox out in columns.
wxHORIZONTAL	Lays the radiobox out in rows.

wxRadioBox get-selection

long (**get-selection**)

Get the ID of the button currently selected.

wxRadioBox set-selection

bool (**set-selection long** *item*)

Sets the given button to be the current selection.

13.41. wxRecordSet is-a wxObject

See also *Database classes overview* (page 349)

Not yet implemented.

Each recordset represents an ODBC database query. You can make multiple queries at a time by using multiple recordsets with a database or you can make your queries in sequential order using the same recordset.

wxRecordSet database

wxDatabase database

The parent database.

wxRecordSet type

wxRecordSet type

The initial type of the recordset. Currently there are two possible values of *type*:

- "wxOPEN_TYPE_DYNASET": Loads only one record at a time into memory. The other data of the result set will be loaded dynamically when moving the cursor. This is the default type.
- "wxOPEN_TYPE_SNAPSHOT": Loads all records of a result set at once. This will need much more memory, but will result in faster access to the ODBC data.

wxRecordSet create

void (**create**)

Constructs a recordset object, and appends the recordset object to the parent database's list of recordset objects, for later destruction when the database is destroyed.

The following slots may be initialized.

- *database*: the parent wxDatabase.
- *type*: the type of recordset, see below.
- *options*: not yet used.

Currently there are two possible values of *type*:

- "wxOPEN_TYPE_DYNASET": Loads only one record at a time into memory. The other data of the result set will be loaded dynamically when moving the cursor. This is the default type.
- "wxOPEN_TYPE_SNAPSHOT": Loads all records of a result set at once. This will need much more memory, but will result in faster access to the ODBC data.

wxRecordSet delete

bool (**delete**)

Deletes the recordset. All data except that stored in user-defined variables will be lost. It also unlinks the recordset object from the parent database's list of recordset objects.

wxRecordSet execute-sql

bool (**execute-sql string** *sql*)

Directly executes a SQL statement. The data will be presented as a normal result set. Note that the recordset must have been created as a snapshot, not dynaset. Dynasets will be implemented in the near future.

Examples of common SQL statements are given in *A selection of SQL commands* (page 353).

wxRecordSet get-char-data

string (**get-char-data string-or-long** *col*)

Returns the character (string) data for the current record at the specified column. The column can be a name or an integer position (starting from zero).

wxRecordSet get-col-name

string (**get-col-name long** *col*)

Gets the name of the coumn at position *col*. Returns the empty string if *col* does not exist.

wxRecordSet get-col-type

string (**get-col-type string-or-long** *col*)

Gets the name of the coumn at position *col* or name *col*. Returns "SQL_TYPE_NULL" if *col* does not exist.

See *ODBC SQL data types* (page 352) for the possible return values from this function.

wxRecordSet get-columns

long (**get-columns optional string** *table* = *""*)

Returns the columns of the table with the specified name. If no name is given, the internal class member *table* will be used. If both names are NULL nothing will happen. The data will be presented as a normal result set, organized as follows:

0 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_QUALIFIER
1 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_OWNER
2 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_NAME
3 (VARCHAR)	COLUMN_NAME
4 (SMALLINT)	DATA_TYPE
5 (VARCHAR)	TYPE_NAME
6 (INTEGER)	PRECISION
7 (INTEGER)	LENGTH
8 (SMALLINT)	SCALE
9 (SMALLINT)	RADIX
10 (SMALLINT)	NULLABLE
11 (VARCHAR)	REMARKS

wxRecordSet get-data-sources

bool (**get-data-sources**)

Gets the currently-defined data sources via the ODBC manager. The data will be presented as a normal result set. See the documentation for the ODBC function SQLDataSources for how the data is organized. The name of the source is at column 0.

wxRecordSet get-error-code

string (**get-error-code**)

Returns the error code of the last ODBC action. This will be a string containing one of:

SQL_ERROR	General error.
SQL_INVALID_HANDLE	An invalid handle was passed to an ODBC function.
SQL_NEED_DATA	ODBC expected some data.
SQL_NO_DATA_FOUND	No data was found by this ODBC call.
SQL_SUCCESS	The call was successful.
SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO	The call was successful, but further information can be obtained from the ODBC manager.

wxRecordSet get-filter

string (**get-filter**)

Returns the current filter.

wxRecordSet get-float-data

double (**get-float-data string-or-long** *col*)

Returns the floating-point data for the current record at the specified column. The column can be a name or an integer position (starting from zero).

wxRecordSet get-foreign-keys

bool (**get-foreign-keys optional string** *ftable* = "" **optional string** *ktable* = "")

Returns a list of foreign keys in the specified table (columns in the specified table that refer to primary keys in other tables), or a list of foreign keys in other tables that refer to the primary key in the specified table.

If *ptable* contains a table name, this function returns a result set containing the primary key of the specified table.

If *ftable* contains a table name, this functions returns a result set of containing all of the foreign keys in the specified table and the primary keys (in other tables) to which they refer.

If both *ptable* and *ftable* contain table names, this function returns the foreign keys in the table specified in *ftable* that refer to the primary key of the table specified in *ptable*. This should be one key at most.

GetForeignKeys returns results as a standard result set. If the foreign keys associated with a primary key are requested, the result set is ordered by FKTABLE_QUALIFIER, FKTABLE_OWNER, FKTABLE_NAME, and KEY_SEQ. If the primary keys associated with a foreign key are requested, the result set is ordered by PKTABLE_QUALIFIER, PKTABLE_OWNER, PKTABLE_NAME, and KEY_SEQ. The following table lists the columns in the result set.

0 (VARCHAR)	PKTABLE_QUALIFIER
1 (VARCHAR)	PKTABLE_OWNER
2 (VARCHAR)	PKTABLE_NAME
3 (VARCHAR)	PKCOLUMN_NAME
4 (VARCHAR)	FKTABLE_QUALIFIER
5 (VARCHAR)	FKTABLE_OWNER
6 (VARCHAR)	FKTABLE_NAME
7 (VARCHAR)	FKCOLUMN_NAME
8 (SMALLINT)	KEY_SEQ
9 (SMALLINT)	UPDATE_RULE
10 (SMALLINT)	DELETE_RULE
11 (VARCHAR)	FK_NAME
12 (VARCHAR)	PK_NAME

wxRecordSet get-int-data

long (**get-int-data string-or-long** *col*)

Returns the integer data for the current record at the specified column. The column can be a name or an integer position (starting from zero).

wxRecordSet get-number-cols

long (**get-number-cols**)

Returns the number of columns in the result set.

wxRecordSet get-number-fields

long (**get-number-fields**)

Not implemented.

wxRecordSet get-number-params

long (**get-number-params**)

Not implemented.

wxRecordSet get-number-records

long (**get-number-records**)

Returns the number of records in the result set.

wxRecordSet get-primary-keys

long (**get-primary-keys optional string** *table* = *""*)

Returns the column names that comprise the primary key of the table with the specified name. If no name is given the class member *tablename* will be used. If both names are NULL nothing will happen. The data will be presented as a normal result set, organized as follows:

0 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_QUALIFIER
1 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_OWNER
2 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_NAME
3 (VARCHAR)	COLUMN_NAME
4 (SMALLINT)	KEY_SEQ
5 (VARCHAR)	PK_NAME

wxRecordSet get-result-set

bool (**get-result-set**)

Copies the data presented by ODBC into the recordset. Depending on the recordset type all or only one record(s) will be copied. Usually this function will be called automatically after each successful database operation.

wxRecordSet get-table-name

string (**get-table-name**)

Returns the name of the current table.

wxRecordSet get-tables

bool (**get-tables**)

Gets the tables of a database. The data will be presented as a normal result set, organized as follows:

0 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_QUALIFIER
1 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_OWNER
2 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_NAME
3 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_TYPE (TABLE, VIEW, SYSTEM TABLE, GLOBAL TEMPORARY, LOCAL TEMPORARY, ALIAS, SYNONYM, or database-specific type)
4 (VARCHAR)	REMARKS

wxRecordSet goto

bool (**goto long** *n*)

Moves the cursor to the record with the number n, where the first record has the number 0.

wxRecordSet is-bof

TRUE (**is-bof**)

Returns TRUE if the user tried to move the cursor before the first record in the set.

wxRecordSet is-field-dirty

bool (**is-field-dirty string-or-long** *field*)

Returns TRUE if the given field has been changed but not saved yet.

wxRecordSet is-field-null

bool (**is-field-null string-or-long** *field*)

Returns TRUE if the given field has no data.

wxRecordSet is-col-nullable

bool (**is-col-nullable string-or-long** *field*)

Returns TRUE if the given column may contain no data.

wxRecordSet is-eof

bool (**is-eof**)

Returns TRUE if the user tried to move the cursor behind the last record in the set.

wxRecordSet is-open

bool (**is-open**)

Returns TRUE if the parent database is open.

wxRecordSet move

bool (**move long** *rows*)

Moves the cursor a given number of rows. Negative values are allowed.

wxRecordSet move-first

bool (**move-first**)

Moves the cursor to the first record.

wxRecordSet move-last

bool (**move-last**)

Moves the cursor to the last record.

wxRecordSet move-next

bool (**move-next**)

Moves the cursor to the next record.

wxRecordSet move-prev

bool (**move-prev**)

Moves the cursor to the previous record.

wxRecordSet query

bool (**query string** *columns* **string** *table* **optional string** *filter*)

Start a query. An SQL string of the following type will automatically be generated and executed: "SELECT columns FROM table WHERE filter".

wxRecordSet set-table-name

bool (**set-table-name string** *table*)

Specify the name of the table you want to use.

13.42. wxServer is-a wxObject

See also *Interprocess communication overview* (page 343)

A server object represents the server side of a DDE conversation.

wxServer service-name

string service-name

The name of the service (or server).

wxServer create

void (**create**)

Creates a server object, and returns an integer id if successful.

The *service-name* slot should be initialized with a string identifying this service to potential clients. Under UNIX, it should contain a valid port number.

wxServer on-accept-connection

wxConnection (**on-accept-connection string** *topic*)

Should be overrident to return an instance of the appropriate wxConnection class, or nil to reject the connection.

13.43. wxSlider is-a wxItem

A slider is a panel item for denoting a range of values. It must be a child of a panel or dialog box.

wxSlider min

int min

The slider minimum value.

wxSlider max

int max

The slider maximum value.

wxSlider value

int value

The value of the slider (set-value and get-value can be called after initialization).

wxSlider create

long (**create**)

Creates a horizontal slider item on the given panel or dialog box. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.

- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this item.
- *label*: may be absent or a string name to label this item.
- *style*: a bit list of values (see below).
- *value*: an integer for initializing the value of the sider.
- *min*: the minimum value (zero or greater).
- *max*: the maximum value (1 or greater).

style is a *bit list* of the following:

wxHORIZONTAL	The item will be created as a horizontal slider.
wxVERTICAL	The item will be created as a vertical slider.

13.44. wxText is-a wxItem

A text item is used for displaying and editing a single line of text. It must be a child of a panel or dialog box. See also *wxMultiText* (page 208) for multiline text items.

wxText value

string value

The initial value. The handlers put-value and get-value are defined for this slot. set-value is a synonym for put-value.

wxText create

long (**create**)

Creates a single-line text item on the given panel or dialog box. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxPanel or wxDialogBox.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this item.
- *label*: may be absent or a string name to label this item.
- *style*: see below.
- *value*: a string for initializing the value of the text item.

The *style* parameter can be a *bit list* of the following:

wxTE_PROCESS_ENTER	The callback function will receive the event wxEVENT_TYPE_TEXT_ENTER_COMMAND. Note that this will break tab traversal for this panel item under Windows. Single-line text only.
wxTE_PASSWORD	The text will be echoed as asterisks. Single-line text only.
wxTE_READONLY	The text will not be user-editable.
wxHSCROLL	A horizontal scrollbar will be displayed. If wxHSCROLL is omitted, only a vertical scrollbar is displayed, and lines will be wrapped. This parameter is ignored

under XView. Multi-line text only.

wxText set-value

bool (**set-value string** *value*)

Set the text item's string value. A synonym for put-value.

13.45. wxTextWindow is-a wxWindow

To display a lot of text, use this subwindow as the child of a *wxFrame* (page 191). It is capable of loading and saving files of ASCII text, and the text can be edited directly.

The following callbacks are valid for the dialog box class:

OnChar (Not XView.) The function is called with the text window identifier, key code, and key event identifier. If the event is an ASCII keypress, the code will correspond to the ASCII code; otherwise, the programmer must refer to the constants defined in `common.h`, in the wxWindows library.

To invoke default processing, call text-window-on-char (to be implemented).

OnSize The function is called with the text window identifier, width and height.

wxTextWindow clear

bool (**clear**)

Clears the contents of a text subwindow. Returns TRUE if successful, FALSE otherwise.

wxTextWindow copy

bool (**copy**)

Copies the selected text to the clipboard.

wxTextWindow cut

bool (**cut**)

Copies the selected text to the clipboard, then removes the selection.

wxTextWindow create

void (**create**)

Creates a text subwindow. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxFrame.

- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this canvas.
- *style*: may be absent or a string style: see below.

style is a *bit list* of some of the following:

wxBORDER	Use this style to draw a thin border in Windows (non-native implementation only).
wxNATIVE_IMPL	Use this style to allow editing under Windows, albeit with a 64K limitation.

wxTextWindow discard-edits

void (**discard-edits**)

Discard any edits in the text window.

wxTextWindow get-contents

string (**get-contents**)

Returns the contents (up to a maximum of 1000 characters).

wxTextWindow load-file

bool (**load-file string** *filename*)

Load the file onto the text subwindow, returning TRUE for success, FALSE for failure.

wxTextWindow modified

bool (**modified**)

Returns TRUE if the text has been modified, FALSE otherwise.

wxTextWindow paste

bool (**paste**)

Pastes the text (if any) from the clipboard to the text window.

wxTextWindow save-file

bool (**save-file string** *filename*)

Saves the text in the subwindow to the given file, returning TRUE for success, FALSE for failure.

wxTextWindow set-editable

Bool (**set-editable bool** *editable*)

Sets the text window to be editable or read-only.

wxTextWindow write

bool (**write string** *text*)

Writes the given string into the text window, at the current cursor point.

13.46. wxTimer is-a wxObject

A timer object can be created to notify the application at regular intervals.

wxTimer create

void (**create**)

Creates a timer object. Use timer-start to start the timer, and register a Notify callback function to receive notification.

wxTimer start

bool (**start long** *milliseconds*)

Starts the timer, notifying at intervals of duration *milliseconds*.

wxTimer stop

bool (**stop**)

Stops the timer.

13.47. wxToolBar is-a wxPanel

See also *Overview* (page 347)

A toolbar is an array of bitmap buttons, implemented by drawing bitmaps onto a canvas, instead of using the native button implementation.

Note: under XView, wxToolBar inherits from wxCanvas, not wxPanel, due to limitations in the XView toolkit.

wxToolBar create-buttons

bool create-buttons

Specify TRUE if the enhanced underlying wxButtonBar class is to be used (optimized for Windows), FALSE for the standard wxToolBar class. The default is TRUE.

wxToolBar orientation

string orientation

Specify wxVERTICAL for vertical layout, or wxHORIZONTAL for horizontal layout. Ignored if doing manual layout.

wxToolBar rows-or-columns

long rows-or-columns

The maximum number of rows or columns in this toolbar (depends on the value of *orientation*. Ignored if doing manual layout.

wxToolBar add-separator

bool (**add-separator long** *id*)

Adds a separator between tools: only functional under Windows 95, but harmless under other platforms.

wxToolBar add-tool

bool (**add-tool long** *id* **long** *index* **wxBitmap** *bitmap1* **optional wxBitmap** *bitmap2 = nil* **optional bool** *is-toggle = FALSE* **optional double** *x = -1.0* **optional double** *x = 1.0* **optional long** *client-data = 0* **optional string** *short-help-string=""* **optional string** *long-help-string=""*)

Adds a tool to the toolbar. Pass at least one bitmap, the bitmap to be displayed when active and not depressed; and optionally, the bitmap to be displayed when the tool is depressed or toggled. Under Windows, only one bitmap is necessary, and under X, the second bitmap will be created automatically as the inverse of the first button if none is supplied.

You can specify whether the tool is allowed to toggle, and pass a position if you are not going to automatically layout the toolbar with *toolbar-layout*. You can associate client data with the tool.

short-help-string is only used by Windows 95 versions of wxCLIPS. The string is used to supply text for a tooltip, a small yellow window that appears as the mouse pointer hovers over the button.

long-help-string specifies a longer help string that can be used by the application.

wxToolBar clear-tools

bool (**clear-tools**)

Clears all the tools from the toolbar.

wxToolBar create

void (**create**)

Creates a toolbar. The following slots may be initialized.

- *parent*: should be a wxFrame.
- *x*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *y*: may be absent or -1 to denote default layout, or zero/positive integer.
- *width*: may be absent or -1 to denote default width, or a positive integer.
- *height*: may be absent or -1 to denote default height, or a positive integer.
- *window-name*: may be absent or a string name to identify this toolbar.
- *style*: may be absent or a string style: see below.
- *create-buttons*: should be 1 (the default) if the toolbar should superimpose the user-supplied buttons onto a larger 3D button. If 0, the tool will be the same size as the button, and the toggle state will be represented by inverting the tool (Windows) or adding a border (X).
- *orientation*: specify wxVERTICAL for vertical layout, or wxHORIZONTAL for horizontal layout. Ignored if doing manual layout.
- *rows-or-columns*: the maximum number of rows or columns in this toolbar (depends on the value of *orientation*. Ignored if doing manual layout.

style may be a *bit list* of:

- wxTB_3DBUTTONS: gives a simple 3D look to the buttons.

Note that absolute tool positioning (or the layout function) does not work for buttonbars under Windows 95: instead, you can specify the number of rows for the toolbar, and use add-separator to achieve inter-tool spacing.

wxToolBar create-tools

bool (**create-tools**)

This should be called when creating Windows 95 buttonbars, after all tools have been added. It adds the tools to the toolbar. You can also call it for non-Windows 95 toolbars and buttonbars, in which case it will have no effect.

wxToolBar enable-tool

bool (**enable-tool long** *tool-id* **bool** *enable*)

Enables the tool (if *enable* is TRUE) or disables it (if *enable* is FALSE).

wxToolBar get-max-height

double (**get-max-height**)

Gets the maximum height of the toolbar when it has been automatically laid out.

wxToolBar get-max-width

double (**get-max-width**)

Gets the maximum width of the toolbar when it has been automatically laid out.

wxToolBar get-tool-client-data

long (**get-tool-client-data long** *tool-id*)

Returns the client data associated with the given tool.

wxToolBar get-tool-enabled

bool (**get-tool-enabled long** *tool-id*)

Returns TRUE if the tool is enabled, FALSE otherwise.

wxToolBar get-tool-long-help

string (**get-tool-long-help long** *tool-id*)

Returns the long help string.

wxToolBar get-tool-short-help

string (**get-tool-short-help long** *tool-id*)

Returns the short help string.

wxToolBar get-tool-state

bool (**get-tool-state long** *tool-id*)

Returns the tool state (TRUE for toggled on, FALSE for off).

wxToolBar layout

bool (**layout**)

Lays out all the tools if automatic layout is required.

wxToolBar on-paint

void (**on-paint**)

Calls the default toolbar paint handler. You may wish to call this if you override the default handler.

wxToolBar set-default-size

bool (**set-default-size long** *width* **long** *height*)

Sets the width and height of tool buttons (Windows only). The default is 24 by 22.

wxToolBar set-margins

bool (**set-margins long** *x* **long** *y*)

Sets the width and height of the toolbar margins and spacing, if automatic layout is being used.

wxToolBar set-tool-long-help

bool (**set-tool-long-help long** *tool-id* **string** *help-string*)

Sets the long help string for this tool.

wxToolBar set-tool-short-help

bool (**set-tool-short-help long** *tool-id* **string** *help-string*)

Sets the short help string for this tool.

wxToolBar toggle-tool

bool (**toggle-tool long** *tool-id* **bool** *toggle*)

Toggles the tool on or off.

13.48. wxWindow is-a wxEvtHandler

The wxWindow is an 'abstract' class, used to access the functionality of classes derived from it. Therefore, please refer to this section when considering other classes.

wxWindow x

long x

The x coordinate of the window.

wxWindow y

long y

The window y coordinate.

wxWindow width

long width

The window width.

wxWindow height

long height

The window height.

wxWindow client-width

long client-width

The window client width (space available for contents of this window).

wxWindow client-height

long client-height

The window client height (space available for contents of this window).

wxWindow centre

bool (**centre word** *orientation*)

orientation may be wxVERTICAL, wxHORIZONTAL or wxBOTH. Centres the window with respect to its parent (or desktop).

wxWindow enable

bool (**enable bool** *enable*)

If *enable* is TRUE, enables the window for input. If *enable* is FALSE, the window is disabled (greyed out in the case of a panel item).

wxWindow find-window-by-name

wxWindow (**find-window-by-name string** *name*)

Finds the descendant window for this window.

wxWindow find-window-by-label

wxWindow (**find-window-by-label string** *label*)

Finds the descendant window for this window.

wxWindow fit

bool (**fit**)

Fits the panel, dialog box or frame around its children.

wxWindow get-name

string (**get-name**)

Gets the window's name (the 'name' parameter passed to a window constructor).

wxWindow get-parent

wxWindow (**get-parent**)

Gets the window's parent, or nil if there no parent.

wxWindow make-modal

bool (**make-modal bool** *modal*)

modal may be TRUE to disable all frames and dialog boxes except this one, or FALSE to enable all frames and dialogs again.

Has no effect under XView.

wxWindow popup-menu

bool (**popup-menu wxMenu** *menu* **double** *x* **double** *y*)

Pops up a menu on the window, at the given position. The menu will be dismissed (but not destroyed) when the user makes a selection.

Note that there is a reliability problem with Motif popup menus; they may not pop up after the first time.

wxWindow set-cursor

bool (**set-cursor wxCursor** *cursor*)

Sets the cursor for this window.

wxWindow set-focus

bool (**set-focus**)

Set this window to have the keyboard focus.

wxWindow set-size

bool (**set-size long** *x* **long** *y* **long** *width* **long** *height*)

Sets the position and size of the window.

wxWindow set-client-size

bool (**set-client-size long** *width* **long** *height*)

Sets the client size (available space for child windows) of the window.

wxWindow show

bool (**show long** *show*)

If *show* is TRUE, shows the window. If *show* is FALSE, the window is hidden. If the window is a modal dialog box, *show = TRUE* will start the modal loop, and *show = FALSE* will terminate the loop (allowing execution to proceed after the first call to *show*).

14. wxCLIPS function groups

This is the reference for CLIPS windowing and other, miscellaneous functions. With these functions, it is possible to create special-purpose user interfaces independent of platform. Currently these capabilities are supported under MS Windows, Open Look and Motif.

14.1. How to use this reference

In the function definitions below, bold words are types, and are not part of CLIPS syntax. Parameter names are in italics. Types are as follows:

- **double** is a double-precision floating point number.
- **long** is a long integer.
- **string** is a double-quoted ASCII string.
- **word** is an unquoted string.
- **multifield** is a CLIPS multi-field value list.

Parameters can be **optional**, in which case defaults are assumed.

Some parameters can be *bit lists* of flags. wxCLIPS mimics the compact C++ syntax by parsing strings, for example:

```
  (frame-create ... "wxSDI | wxDEFAULT")
```

Each identifier in such a parameter is translated to an integer value, and all are logical-or'ed together to produce an integer which is passed to the appropriate wxWindows C++ function.

Note: In Windows NT or WIN32s versions of Hardy, integer identifiers can be negative. So when validating integer identifiers, test for values of zero or -1, rather than for values less than zero.

Functions are grouped by class: in the underlying C++ library wxWindows, these are actual C++ classes. The functions are used in an object-oriented way, in that long integer identifiers represent an object, or instance, of a particular class. Some functions operate on several classes of object; for example, the functions prefixed **window** operate on classes derived from window, such as canvas, frame, dialog box, panel item. Similarly, the functions prefixed **dc** operate on different kinds of device context.

Most functions either take an integer identifier (checking its type before doing the appropriate thing) or return a new one.

In C++, the application would derive new classes and override certain member functions, such as **OnClose**, to intercept messages or events sent to the window objects. In CLIPS, the same effect is achieved by registering callback functions for specific events, using *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

14.2. Application

One object of class 'application' is always present, and its implementation depends upon the C++ application hosting the wxCLIPS environment.

If an application defines a function called app-on-init, the wxCLIPS user interface can start up the application from a standard menu item, or straightaway if the **-start** flag is used on the command line. This function is not relevant to embedded versions of wxCLIPS.

If app-on-init is defined, it must initialize the main frame and return its integer identifier, or zero if the application could not be initialized.

The following *callbacks* are valid for the app class.

OnCharHook Under Windows only, all key strokes going to a dialog box or frame can be intercepted before being passed on for normal processing. This callback function takes the window id and event id, and should return 1 to override further processing, or 0 to do default processing. If the function returns 0, the OnCharHook message will be sent to the active window. See also *Key event* (page 283).

app-create

long (**app-create**)

Returns the identifier of the current application object. If called multiple times, will always return the same number since there is only one application object, which will have been created before wxCLIPS is initialized.

app-get-show-frame-on-init

long (**app-get-show-frame-on-init long** *id*)

Returns 1 if the application will show the top-level frame automatically on initialization, 0 otherwise.

You can pass 0 or a return value from app-create for the *id* parameter.

app-on-init

long (**app-on-init**)

If defined, should initialize the application and return the identifer of the top-level frame, or zero if there is no main window associated with the CLIPS program. If zero is returned, the wxCLIPS development window will be created if it does not already exist. Under Windows, you may call *show-ide-window* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) from this function.

app-set-show-frame-on-init

void (**app-set-show-frame-on-init long** *id* **long** *show*)

Called before on-app-init returns, can change the behaviour of wxCLIPS to not force a 'show' of the main frame. This might be needed if you wish to set the focus for a different window on initialization. *show* should be 0 to disable showing, 1 otherwise (the default behaviour).

You can pass 0 or a return value from app-create for the *id* parameter.

14.3. Bitmap

A bitmap is a rectangular array of pixels, possibly in colour. A bitmap can be created in memory, or loaded from an XBM file under X, or BMP file under Windows.

A bitmap can be drawn on a canvas by selecting it into a *memory-dc* (page 287) object and using *dc-blit* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**). Bitmaps can also be used to create buttons; see *button-create-from-bitmap* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

bitmap-create

long (**bitmap-create float** *width* **float** *height* **optional int** *depth*)

Creates a bitmap in memory. The programmer can draw into the bitmap by selecting it into a memory device context, for later drawing on an output device context such as a canvas device context.

bitmap-delete

long (**bitmap-delete long** *bitmap-id*)

Deletes the given bitmap.

bitmap-get-colourmap

long (**bitmap-get-colourmap long** *id*)

Gets the colourmap associated with the bitmap; if none, zero will be returned.

bitmap-get-height

long (**bitmap-get-height long** *id*)

Gets the height of the bitmap.

bitmap-get-width

long (**bitmap-get-width long** *id*)

Gets the width of the bitmap.

bitmap-load-from-file

long (**bitmap-load-from-file string** *file* **optional word** *bitmap-type*)

Loads a bitmap from a file, and returns a new bitmap identifier.

bitmap-type specifies the type of bitmap to be loaded, and may be one of:

- wxBITMAP_TYPE_BMP: Windows BMP (the default under Windows).
- wxBITMAP_TYPE_XBM: X monochrome bitmap (the default under X).
- wxBITMAP_TYPE_GIF: GIF bitmap (only under X).
- wxBITMAP_TYPE_XPM: XPM colour bitmap (under Windows and X if wxCLIPS has

been compiled to include this option).

- wxBITMAP_TYPE_RESOURCE: Windows resource bitmap; unlikely to be used since the resources compiled into wxCLIPS cannot be changed from CLIPS.

Note that whether any of these formats are available depends on how wxCLIPS was compiled.

14.4. Brush

A brush is a an object that can be set for a device context (see *canvas-get-dc* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), *device context* (page 258)) and determines the fill colour and style for subsequent drawing operations.

See also *pen* (page 299).

brush-create

long (**brush-create string** *colour* **word** *style*)

long (**brush-create long** *colour-value* **word** *style*)

Creates a brush for use in a device context.

colour is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK", "CYAN"), and *style* may be one of wxSOLID, wxTRANSPARENT.

colour-value is a value returned from *colour-create* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

A brush must be set to fill graphic shapes.

brush-delete

long (**brush-delete long** *brush-id*)

Deletes the given brush.

14.5. Button

A button is a rectangular control which can be placed on a *panel* (page 297) to invoke a function.

button-create

long (**button-create long** *panel-id* **string** *callback* **string** *label*
  optional long *x* **optional long** *y*
  optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a label button on the given panel. The callback may be the empty string ("") to denote no callback, or a word or string for the function name. The function will be called when the button is pressed, with the button ID as argument. If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

The *style* argument is reserved for future use.

name gives the button a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

button-create-from-bitmap

long (**button-create-from-bitmap long** *panel-id* **string** *callback* **long** *bitmap-id*
optional long *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a bitmap button on the given panel. The callback may be the empty string ("") to denote no callback, or a word or string for the function name. The function will be called when the button is pressed, with the button ID as argument. If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

The *style* argument is reserved for future use.

name gives the button a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

14.6. Canvas

A subwindow used for drawing arbitrary graphics. It must be the child of a *frame* (page 266).

The following callbacks are valid for the canvas class.

OnChar The function is called with the canvas identifier, key code, and key event identifier. If the event is an ASCII keypress, the code will correspond to the ASCII code; otherwise, the programmer must refer to the constants defined in `common.h`, in the wxWindows library. See also *Key event* (page 283).
OnEvent Called with a canvas identifier and a *mouse event* (page 292) identifier.
OnScroll Called with a canvas identifier and a *command event* (page 246) identifier.
OnPaint Called with a canvas identifier when the canvas receives a repaint event from the window manager.
OnSize The function is called with the window identifier, width and height.

See also *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

canvas-create

long (**canvas-create long** *parent-id* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style="wxRETAINED"* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a canvas for drawing graphics on. *parent-id* must be a valid frame ID.

The value of **style** can be a *bit list* of the following values:

wxBORDER	Gives the canvas a thin border (Windows 3 and Motif only).
wxRETAINED	Gives the canvas a wxWindows-implemented backing store, making repainting much faster but at a potentially costly memory premium (XView and Motif only).
wxBACKINGSTORE	Gives the canvas an X-implemented backing store (XView and Motif

only). The X server may choose to ignore this request, whereas wxRETAINED is always implemented under X.

name gives the canvas a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

canvas-get-dc

long (**canvas-get-dc long** *canvas-id*)

Return the device context handle belonging to the canvas. The device context must be retrieved before anything can be drawn on the canvas. If your drawing function is parameterized by a device context, you will be able to pass other types of device context to your drawing routine, such as PostScript and Windows metafile device contexts.

canvas-get-scroll-page-x

long (**canvas-get-scroll-page-x long** *canvas-id*)

Gets the number of lines per horizontal scroll page.

canvas-get-scroll-page-y

long (**canvas-get-scroll-page-y long** *canvas-id*)

Gets the number of lines per vertical scroll page.

canvas-get-scroll-pos-x

long (**canvas-get-scroll-pos-x long** *canvas-id*)

Gets the horizontal scroll position in scroll units.

canvas-get-scroll-pos-y

long (**canvas-get-scroll-pos-y long** *canvas-id*)

Gets the vertical scroll position in scroll units.

canvas-get-scroll-range-x

long (**canvas-get-scroll-range-x long** *canvas-id*)

Gets the number of horizontal scroll positions.

canvas-get-scroll-range-y

long (**canvas-get-scroll-range-y long** *canvas-id*)

Gets the number of vertical scroll positions.

canvas-get-scroll-pixels-per-unit-x

long (**canvas-get-scroll-pixels-per-unit-x long** *canvas-id*)

Gets the number of pixels per horizontal scroll unit, as set in *canvas-set-scrollbars* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

canvas-get-scroll-pixels-per-unit-x

long (**canvas-get-scroll-pixels-per-unit-y long** *canvas-id*)

Gets the number of pixels per vertical scroll unit, as set in *canvas-set-scrollbars* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

canvas-on-char

long (**canvas-on-char long** *panel-id* **long** *event-id*)

The default implementation of the OnChar callback. Call this to pass intercepted characters through to the canvas.

canvas-on-scroll

long (**canvas-on-scroll long** *panel-id* **long** *event-id*)

The default implementation of the OnScroll callback.

canvas-set-scrollbars

long (**canvas-set-scrollbars long** *canvas-id* **long** *x-unit-size* **long** *y-unit-size*
long *x-length* **long** *y-length* **long** *x-page-length* **long** *y-page-length*)

Set the scrollbars for the given canvas. The first argument pair specifies the number of pixels per logical scroll unit, that is, the number of pixels to scroll when a scroll arrow is clicked. If either is zero or less, that scrollbar will not appear. The second pair specifies the size of the virtual canvas in logical scroll units. The third pair of arguments specify the number of scroll units per page, that is, the amount to scroll by when the scrollbar is page-scrolled (usually by clicking either side of the scrollbar handle).

canvas-set-scroll-page-x

void (**canvas-set-scroll-page-x long** *canvas-id* **long** *value*)

Sets the number of lines per horizontal scroll page.

canvas-set-scroll-page-y

void (**canvas-set-scroll-page-y long** *canvas-id* **long** *value*)

Sets the number of lines per vertical scroll page.

canvas-set-scroll-pos-x

void (**canvas-set-scroll-pos-x long** *canvas-id* **long** *value*)

Sets the horizontal scroll position.

canvas-set-scroll-pos-y

void (**canvas-set-scroll-pos-y long** *canvas-id* **long** *value*)

Sets the vertical scroll position.

canvas-set-scroll-range-x

void (**canvas-set-scroll-range-x long** *canvas-id* **long** *value*)

Sets the number of positions on the horizontal scrollbar.

canvas-set-scroll-range-y

void (**canvas-set-scroll-range-y long** *canvas-id* **long** *value*)

Sets the number of positions on the vertical scrollbar.

canvas-scroll

long (**canvas-scroll long** *canvas-id* **long** *x-position* **long** *y-position*)

Scroll the canvas programmatically to the given scroll position. To convert from pixel position to scroll position, divide the pixel position by the scroll unit size you passed to *canvas-set-scrollbars* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

canvas-view-start-x

long (**canvas-view-start-x long** *canvas-id*)

Returns the first visible horizontal scroll position. Note this is in scroll units, not pixel, so to convert to pixel position you need to multiply this value by the result of *canvas-get-scroll-pixels-per-unit-x* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

canvas-view-start-y

long (**canvas-view-start-y long** *canvas-id*)

Returns the first visible vertical scroll position. Note this is in scroll units, not pixel, so to convert to pixel position you need to multiply this value by the result of *canvas-get-scroll-pixels-per-unit-y* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

14.7. Checkbox

A checkbox is a small box with a label, and can be in one of two states. It must be the child of a *panel* (page 297).

check-box-create

long (**check-box-create long** *panel-id* **string** *callback* **string** *label*
optional long *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style*
optional string *name*)

Creates a checkbox on the given panel. The callback may be the empty string ("") to denote no callback, or a word or string for the function name. The function will be called when the checkbox is turned on or off, with the checkbox ID as argument. If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

The *style* parameter is reserved for future use.

name gives the checkbox a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

check-box-set-value

long (**check-box-set-value long** *check-box-id* **long** *value*)

Set the check box value (0 or 1).

check-box-get-value

long (**check-box-get-value long** *check-box-id*)

Gets the check box value (0 or 1).

14.8. Choice

A choice item is similar to a single-selection *listbox* (page 284) but normally only the current selection is displayed. It must be the child of a *panel* (page 297).

choice-create

long (**choice-create long** *panel-id* **string** *callback* **string** *label*
optional long *x* **optional long** *y* **optional long** *width* **optional long** *height*
optional multifield *strings* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a choice item on the given panel. A choice consists of a list of strings, one of which may be selected and displayed at any one time. The callback may be the empty string ("") to denote no callback, or a word or string for the function name. The function will be called when an item in the choice list is selected, with the choice ID as argument. If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

strings should be a multifield of strings. Note that under Motif, it is recommended that the values are passed in this function, rather than using *choice-append*, because of the nature of Motif (i.e. horrible). Otherwise, things are likely to be messed up.

The *style* parameter is reserved for future use.

name gives the choice item a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

choice-append

long (**choice-append long** *choice-id* **string** *item*)

Append the string item to the choice.

choice-find-string

long (**choice-find-string long** *choice-id* **string** *item*)

Searches for the given string and if found, returns the position ID of the string.

choice-clear

long (**choice-clear long** *choice-id*)

Clears all the strings from the choice item.

choice-get-selection

long (**choice-get-selection long** *choice-id*)

Get the ID of the string currently selected.

choice-get-string-selection

string (**choice-get-string-selection long** *choice-id*)

Get the string currently selected.

choice-set-selection

long (**choice-set-selection long** *choice-id* **long** *item-id*)

Sets the choice selection to the given item ID (numbered from zero).

choice-set-string-selection

long (**choice-set-string-selection long** *choice-id* **string** *item*)

Set the selection by passing the appropriate item string.

choice-get-string

string (**choice-get-string long** *choice-id* **long** *item-id*)

Get the string associated with the given item ID.

choice-number

long (**choice-number long** *choice-id*)

Returns the number of strings in the choice item.

14.9. Client

See also *Interprocess communication overview* (page 343)

A client object represents the client side of a DDE conversation.

To delete a client object, use object-delete.

client-create

long (**client-create**)

Creates a client object, returning the integer id of the object if successful. No event handlers need be defined for a client object.

A connection is not made until *client-make-connection* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) is called.

client-make-connection

long (**client-make-connection long** *id* **string** *host* **string** *service* **string** *topic*)

Makes a connection to a server, returning the id of the connection if successful.

id is the client id returned from client-create.

host is ignored under Windows, and should contain a valid internet host name under X.

service is a DDE service identifier (under X should contain a socket identifier).

topic is a topic name for this connection.

Any connection event handlers should be defined by the application code after this function is called, assuming the return result is not zero.

14.10. Colour

A colour value is not in fact a class, but a long integer which contains the values of the red, green and blue components in a colour. A colour value may be passed to pen and brush creation functions, and also to some *Grid* (page 272) member functions.

colour-create

long (**colour-create long** *red* **long** *green* **long** *blue*)

long (**colour-create long** *parent-id* **string** *name*) A colour value may be created either by passing red, green and blue values, or by passing a colour name such as RED.

colour-red

long (**colour-red long** *colour*)

Returns the red component of the colour, a number between 0 and 255.

colour-green

long (**colour-green long** *colour*)

Returns the green component of the colour, a number between 0 and 255.

colour-blue

long (**colour-blue long** *colour*)

Returns the blue component of the colour, a number between 0 and 255.

14.11. Command event

A command event is associated with each panel item or menu callback. It is not passed to the callback, so must be retrieved within a callback using *panel-item-get-command-event* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

The command event types are as follows:

- **wxEVENT_TYPE_BUTTON_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_CHECKBOX_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_CHOICE_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_LISTBOX_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_TEXT_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_TEXT_ENTER_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_MULTITEXT_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_MENU_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_SLIDER_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_RADIOBOX_COMMAND**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_SET_FOCUS**
- **wxEVENT_TYPE_KILL_FOCUS**

command-event-get-selection

long (**command-event-get-selection long** *id*)

Returns the identifier selection corresponding to the selected item, for example a listbox or menu item.

command-event-is-selection

long (**command-event-is-selection long** *id*)

Returns 1 if the event was a selection event, 0 otherwise.

14.12. Connection

See also *Connection overview* (page 344)

A connection object id is used for initiating DDE commands and requests using functions such as connection-execute, and it also has event handlers associated with it to respond to commands from the other side of the connection.

connection-advise

long (**connection-advise long** *id* **string** *item* **string** *data*)

Called by a server application to pass data to a client (for example, when a spreadsheet cell has been updated, and the client is interested in this value).

item is the name of the item, and *data* is a string representing the item's data.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

connection-create

long (**connection-create**)

Creates a connection object. Note that if you use the server OnAcceptConnection callback, the object will be created for you. If you use OnAcceptConnectionEx then you must call connection-create yourself from within that callback.

connection-execute

long (**connection-execute long** *id* **string** *data*)

Called by a client application to execute a command in the server. Note there is no item in this command.

data is a string representing the item's data.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

To get a result from a server, you need to call connection-request explicitly, since connection-execute doesn't return data.

connection-disconnect

long (**connection-disconnect long** *id*)

Called by a client or server application to terminate this connection. After this call, the connection id is no longer valid.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

connection-poke

long (**connection-poke long** *id* **string** *item* **string** *data*)

Called by a client application to poke data into the server.

item is the name of the item, and *data* is a string representing the item's data.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

connection-request

string (**connection-request long** *id* **string** *item*)

Called by a client application to request data from a server.

item is the name of the requested data item.

Returns a string representing the data if successful, the empty string otherwise.

connection-start-advise

long (**connection-start-advise long** *id* **string** *item*)

Called by a client application to indicate interest in a particular piece of data in a server. The client connection should then recieve OnAdvise messages when the data is updated in the server.

item is the name of the data item of interest.

Returns 1 if the advise loop is allowed, 0 otherwise.

connection-stop-advise

long (**connection-stop-advise long** *id* **string** *item*)

Called by a client application to indicate a termination of interest in a particular piece of data in a server.

item is the name of the data item of interest.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

14.13. Cursor

A cursor is a small bitmap used for representing the mouse pointer. It can be set for a particular subwindow, using *window-set-cursor*, as a cue for what operations are possible in this window at this point in time.

At present, it is only possible to create a cursor in wxCLIPS from a fixed range of cursor types.

cursor-create

long (**cursor-create string** *stock-cursor-name*)

Creates a stock cursor. *stock-cursor-name* must be one of the following:

- wxCURSOR_ARROW
- wxCURSOR_BULLSEYE
- wxCURSOR_CHAR
- wxCURSOR_CROSS
- wxCURSOR_HAND
- wxCURSOR_IBEAM
- wxCURSOR_LEFT_BUTTON
- wxCURSOR_MAGNIFIER
- wxCURSOR_MIDDLE_BUTTON
- wxCURSOR_NO_ENTRY
- wxCURSOR_PAINT_BRUSH
- wxCURSOR_PENCIL
- wxCURSOR_POINT_LEFT
- wxCURSOR_POINT_RIGHT
- wxCURSOR_QUESTION_ARROW
- wxCURSOR_RIGHT_BUTTON
- wxCURSOR_SIZENESW
- wxCURSOR_SIZENS
- wxCURSOR_SIZENWSE
- wxCURSOR_SIZEWE

- wxCURSOR_SIZING
- wxCURSOR_SPRAYCAN
- wxCURSOR_WAIT
- wxCURSOR_WATCH
- wxCURSOR_BLANK
- wxCURSOR_CROSS_REVERSE (X only)
- wxCURSOR_DOUBLE_ARROW (X only)
- wxCURSOR_BASED_ARROW_UP (X only)
- wxCURSOR_BASED_ARROW_DOWN (X only)

cursor-delete

long (**cursor-delete long** *cursor-id*)

Deletes the given cursor.

cursor-load-from-file

long (**cursor-load-from-file string** *filename* **word** *bitmap-type* **optional long** *hotspot-x* **optional long** *hotspot-y*)

Loads a cursor from a file.

hotspot-x and *hotspot-y* are currently only used under Windows when loading from an icon file, to specify the cursor hotspot relative to the top left of the image.

Under X, the permitted cursor types in *bitmap-type* are:

- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_XBM** Load an X bitmap file

Under Windows, the permitted types are:

- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_CUR** Load a cursor from a .cur cursor file (only if USE_RESOURCE_LOADING_IN_MSW is enabled in wx_setup.h).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_CUR_RESOURCE** Load a Windows resource (as specified in the .rc file).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_ICO** Load a cursor from a .ico icon file (only if USE_RESOURCE_LOADING_IN_MSW is enabled in wx_setup.h). Specify *hotSpotX* and *hotSpotY*.

14.14. Database

See also *Database classes overview* (page 349)

Every database object represents an ODBC connection. The connection may be closed and reopened.

database-close

long (**database-close long** *id*)

Resets the statement handles of any associated recordset objects, and disconnects from the current data source.

database-create

long (**database-create**)

Creates a new ODBC database handle and returns an id. The constructor of the first wxDatabase instance of an application initializes the ODBC manager.

database-delete

long (**database-delete long** *id*)

Destructor. Resets and destroys any associated wxRecordSet instances.

The destructor of the last wxDatabase instance will deinitialize the ODBC manager.

database-error-occurred

long (**database-error-occurred long** *id*)

Returns 1 if the last action caused an error.

database-get-database-name

string (**database-get-database-name long** *id*)

Returns the name of the database associated with the current connection.

database-get-data-source

string (**database-get-data-source long** *id*)

Returns the name of the connected data source.

database-get-error-code

string (**database-get-error-code long** *id*)

Returns the error code of the last ODBC function call. This will be a string containing one of:

SQL_ERROR	General error.
SQL_INVALID_HANDLE	An invalid handle was passed to an ODBC function.
SQL_NEED_DATA	ODBC expected some data.
SQL_NO_DATA_FOUND	No data was found by this ODBC call.
SQL_SUCCESS	The call was successful.
SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO	The call was successful, but further information can be obtained from the ODBC manager.

database-get-error-message

string (**database-get-error-message long** *id*)

Returns the last error message returned by the ODBC manager.

database-get-error-number

long (**database-get-error-number long** *id*)

Returns the last native error. A native error is an ODBC driver dependent error number.

database-is-open

long (**database-is-open long** *id*)

Returns 1 if a connection is open.

database-open

long (**database-open long** *id* **string** *datasource* **optional long** *exclusive = 1* **optional string** *readonly = 1* **optional string** *username = "ODBC"* **optional string** *password = ""*)

Connect to a data source. *datasource* contains the name of the ODBC data source. The parameters *exclusive* and *readonly* are not used.

14.15. Date

A class for manipulating dates.

date-add-months

long (**date-add-months long** *date* **long** *months*)

Adds the given number of months to the date, returning 1 if successful.

date-add-weeks

long (**date-add-weeks long** *date* **long** *weeks*)

Adds the given number of weeks to the date, returning 1 if successful.

date-add-years

long (**date-add-years long** *date* **long** *years*)

Adds the given number of months to the date, returning 1 if successful.

date-create

long (**date-create**)

Constructs a date object, initialized to zero. You are responsible for deleting this object when you have finished with it.

long (**date-create long** *month* **long** *day* **long** *year*)

Constructs a date object with the specified date. You are responsible for deleting this object when you have finished with it.

month is a number from 1 to 12.

day is a number from 1 to 31.

year is a year, such as 1995, 2005.

date-create-julian

long (**date-create-julian long** *julian*)

Constructor taking an integer representing the Julian date.

date-create-string

long (**date-create-string string** *date*)

Constructor taking a string representing a date. This must be either the string TODAY, or of the form `MM/DD/YYYY` or `MM-DD-YYYY`. For example:

```
    (bind ?date (date-create-string "11/26/1966"))
```

date-delete

long (**date-delete long** *date*)

Deletes the date object.

date-format

string (**date-format long** *date*)

Formats the date into a string according to the current display type.

date-get-day

long (**date-get-day long** *date*)

Returns the numeric day (in the range 1 to 365).

date-get-day-of-week

long (**date-get-day-of-week long** *date*)

Returns the integer day of the week (in the range 1 to 7).

date-get-day-of-week-name

string (**get-day-of-week-name long** *date*)

Returns the name of the day of week.

date-get-day-of-year

long (**date-get-day-of-year long** *date*)

Returns the day of the year (from 1 to 365).

date-get-days-in-month

long (**date-get-days-in-month long** *date*)

Returns the number of days in the month (in the range 1 to 31).

date-get-first-day-of-month

long (**date-get-first-day-of-month long** *date*)

Returns the day of week that is first in the month (in the range 1 to 7).

date-get-julian-date

long (**date-get-julian-date long** *date*)

Returns the Julian date.

date-get-month

long (**date-get-month long** *date*)

Returns the month number (in the range 1 to 12).

date-get-month-end

long (**date-get-month-end long** *date*)

Returns a new date representing the day that is last in the month. The new date must be deleted when it is finished with.

date-get-month-name

string (**date-get-month-name long** *date*)

Returns the name of the month.

date-get-month-start

long (**date-get-month-start long** *date*)

Returns a new date representing the first day of the month. The new date must be deleted when it is finished with.

date-get-week-of-month

long (**date-get-week-of-month long** *date*)

Returns the week of month (in the range 1 to 6).

date-get-week-of-year

long (**date-get-week-of-year long** *date*)

Returns the week of year (in the range 1 to 52).

date-get-year

long (**date-get-year long** *date*)

Returns the year as an integer (such as '1995').

date-get-year-end

long (**date-get-year-end long** *date*)

Returns a new date the date representing the last day of the year. Delete the new date when you have finished with it.

date-get-year-start

long (**date-get-year-start long** *date*)

Returns a new date the date representing the first day of the year. Delete the new date when you have finished with it.

date-is-leap-year

long (**date-is-leap-year long** *date*)

Returns 1 if the year of this date is a leap year.

date-set-current-date

long (**date-set-current-date long** *date*)

Sets the date to current system date.

date-set-julian

long (**date-set-julian long** *date* **long** *julian*)

Sets the date to the given Julian date.

date-set-date

long (**date-set-date long** *date* **long** *month* **long** *day* **long** *year*)

Sets the date to the given date.

month is a number from 1 to 12.

day is a number from 1 to 31.

year is a year, such as 1995, 2005.

date-set-format

long (**date-set-format long** *date* **string** *format*)

Sets the current format type.

format should be one of:

wxDAY	Format day only.
wxMONTH	Format month only.
wxMDY	Format MONTH, DAY, YEAR.
wxFULL	Format day, month and year in US style: DAYOFWEEK, MONTH, DAY, YEAR.
wxEUROPEAN	Format day, month and year in European style: DAY, MONTH, YEAR.

date-set-option

long (**date-set-option long** *date* **string** *option* **long** *enable=1*)

Enables or disables an option for formatting. *option* may be one of:

wxNO_CENTURY	The century is not formatted.
wxDATE_ABBR	Month and day names are abbreviated to 3 characters when formatting.

date-add-days

long (**date-add-days long** *date* **long** *days*)

Adds an integer number of days to the date, returning a new date object.

date-subtract-days

long (**date-subtract-days long** *date* **long** *days*)

Subtracts an integer number of days from the date, returning a new date object.

date-subtract

long (**date-subtract long** *date* **long** *date1* **long** *date2*)

Subtracts one date from another, return the number of intervening days.

date-add-self

long (**date-add-self long** *date* **long** *days*)

Adds an integer number of days to the date, returning 1 if successful.

date-subtract-self

long (**date-subtract-self long** *date* **long** *days*)

Subtracts an integer number of days from the date, returning 1 if successful.

date-le

long (**date-le long** *date1* **long** *date2*)

Function to compare two dates, returning 1 if *date1* is earlier than *date2*.

date-leq

long (**date-leq long** *date1* **long** *date2*)

Function to compare two dates, returning 1 if *date1* is earlier than or equal to *date2*.

date-ge

long (**date-ge long** *date1* **long** *date2*)

Function to compare two dates, returning 1 if *date1* is later than *date2*.

date-geq

long (**date-geq long** *date1* **long** *date2*)

Function to compare two dates, returning 1 if *date1* is later than or equal to *date2*.

date-eq

long (**date-eq long** *date1* **long** *date2*)

Function to compare two dates, returning 1 if *date1* is equal to *date2*.

date-neq

long (**date-neq long** *date1* **long** *date2*)

Function to compare two dates, returning 1 if *date1* is not equal to *date2*.

14.16. Device context

See also *Overview* (page 346)

A device context is an abstraction of a surface that can be drawn onto.

The following functions can be used with any device context identifier, with the exception of dc-blit which must not be used with a PostScript device context, and dc-get-text-extent-width, dc-get-text-extent-height which do not function correctly on PostScript or metafile device contexts.

dc-begin-drawing

long (**dc-begin-drawing long** *id*)

Bracket a series of drawing primitives in dc-begin-drawing and dc-end-drawing to optimize drawing under Windows, and also if drawing to a panel or dialog box context, for which these calls are mandatory. The calls may be nested.

dc-blit

long (**dc-blit long** *dest-dc-id* **double** *dest-x* **double** *dest-y* **double** *width* **double** *height* **long** *source-dc-id* **double** *source-x* **double** *source-y* **optional string** *logical-op = "wxCOPY"*)

Block-copies the given area from a source device context to a destination device context. This operation is not available to PostScript and Windows Metafile destination device contexts.

The argument *logical-op* sets the current logical function for the canvas. This determines how a source pixel from the source device context combines with a destination pixel in the current device context.

The possible values and their meaning in terms of source and destination pixel values are as follows:

`wxAND`	`src AND dst`
`wxAND_INVERT`	`(NOT src) AND dst`
`wxAND_REVERSE`	`src AND (NOT dst)`
`wxCLEAR`	`0`
`wxCOPY`	`src`
`wxEQUIV`	`(NOT src) XOR dst`
`wxINVERT`	`NOT dst`
`wxNAND`	`(NOT src) OR (NOT dst)`
`wxNOR`	`(NOT src) AND (NOT dst)`
`wxNO_OP`	`dst`
`wxOR`	`src OR dst`
`wxOR_INVERT`	`(NOT src) OR dst`
`wxOR_REVERSE`	`src OR (NOT dst)`
`wxSET`	`1`
`wxSRC_INVERT`	`NOT src`
`wxXOR`	`src XOR dst`

The default is wxCOPY, which simply draws with the current colour. The others combine the current colour and the background using a logical operation. wxXOR is commonly used for drawing rubber bands or moving outlines, since drawing twice reverts to the original colour.

dc-clear

long (**dc-clear long** *dc-id*)

Clears the device context using the background colour.

dc-delete

long (**dc-delete long** *dc-id*)

Deletes a device context that has been explicitly created (so not a canvas DC).

dc-destroy-clipping-region

long (**dc-destroy-clipping-region long** *dc-id*)

Destroys the current clipping region.

dc-draw-ellipse

long (**dc-draw-ellipse long** *dc-id*
double *x* **double** *y* **double** *width* **double** *height*)

Draws an ellipse. The outline and filling attributes are determined by the pen and brush settings respectively.

dc-draw-line

long (**dc-draw-line long** *dc-id*
double *x1* **double** *y1* **double** *x2* **double** *y2*)

Draws a line between the given points.

dc-draw-lines

long (**dc-draw-lines long** *dc-id* **multifield** *list*)

Draws lines between the given points. *list* is a multifield, which can be created by a call to mv-append and a list of arguments. The list must contain an even number of floating-point values, interpreted in pairs as the points determining the multiline.

dc-draw-point

long (**dc-draw-point long** *dc-id* **double** *x* **double** *y*)

Draws a point.

dc-draw-polygon

long (**dc-draw-polygon long** *dc-id* **multifield** *list*)

Draws a (possibly filled) polygon. *list* is a multifield, which can be created by a call to mv-append and a list of arguments. The list must contain an even number of floating-point values, interpreted in pairs as the points determining the polygon. The outline and filling attributes are determined by the pen and brush settings respectively.

dc-draw-rectangle

long (**dc-draw-rectangle long** *dc-id*
double *x* **double** *y* **double** *width* **double** *height*)

Draws a rectangle. The outline and filling attributes are determined by the pen and brush settings respectively.

dc-draw-rounded-rectangle

long (**dc-draw-rounded-rectangle long** *dc-id*
double *x* **double** *y* **double** *width* **double** *height* **double** *radius*)

Draws a rounded rectangle, with corners with a specified radius (optional). The outline and filling attributes are determined by the pen and brush settings respectively.

dc-draw-text

long (**dc-draw-text long** *dc-id*
string *text* **double** *x* **double** *y*)

Draw text at the given position, using the font set by *dc-set-font* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), and using the colours set by *dc-set-text-foreground* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) and *dc-set-text-background* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) respectively.

dc-draw-spline

long (**dc-draw-spline long** *dc-id* **multifield** *list*)

Draws a spline curve. *list* is a multifield, which can be created by a call to mv-append and a list of arguments. The list must contain an even number of floating-point values, interpreted in pairs as the points determining the spline shape.

dc-end-doc

long (**dc-end-doc long** *dc-id*)

Ends a document (such as a PostScript or Windows printer document).

dc-end-drawing

long (**dc-end-drawing long** *id*)

Bracket a series of drawing primitives in dc-begin-drawing and dc-end-drawing to optimize drawing under Windows, and also if drawing to a panel or dialog box context, for which these calls are mandatory. The calls may be nested.

dc-end-page

long (**dc-end-page long** *dc-id*)

Ends a page.

dc-get-min-x

double (**dc-get-min-x long** *dc-id*)

Returns the minimum X value drawn so far on the device context.

dc-get-min-y

double (**dc-get-min-y long** *dc-id*)

Returns the minimum Y value drawn so far on the device context.

dc-get-max-x

double (**dc-get-max-x long** *dc-id*)

Returns the maximum X value drawn so far on the device context.

dc-get-max-y

double (**dc-get-max-y long** *dc-id*)

Returns the maximum Y value drawn so far on the device context.

dc-get-text-extent-height

double (**dc-get-text-extent-height long** *dc-id* **string** *text*)

Returns the height of the text as drawn on this device context, in logical units.

dc-get-text-extent-width

double (**dc-get-text-extent-width long** *dc-id* **string** *text*)

Returns the width of the text as drawn on this device context, in logical units.

dc-ok

long (**dc-ok long** *id*)

Returns 1 if the device context is OK (usually meaning, it has been initialised correctly), and 0 otherwise.

dc-start-doc

long (**dc-start-doc long** *dc-id* **string** *message*)

Starts a document (such as a PostScript or Windows printer document) using the given string for any associated message box (the message is not in fact currently used).

dc-start-page

long (**dc-start-page long** *dc-id*)

Starts a page.

dc-set-background

long (**dc-set-background long** *dc-id* **long** *brush*)

Sets the background brush.

dc-set-background-mode

long (**dc-set-background-mode long** *dc-id* **string** *mode*)

Sets the mode for drawing text background.

mode may be wxSOLID (use the text background colour) or wxTRANSPARENT (do not fill the background).

dc-set-brush

long (**dc-set-brush long** *dc-id* **long** *brush-id*)

Sets the current brush for the device context. *brush-id* is an ID returned from a call to *brush-create* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), or zero to select any existing brush out of the device context.

dc-set-colourmap

long (**dc-set-colourmap long** *dc-id* **long** *cmap-id*)

Sets the colourmap for the device context. If *cmap-id* is zero, the original colourmap is restored so that it is safe to delete the device context (or colourmap).

dc-set-clipping-region

long (**dc-set-clipping-region long** *dc-id*
double *x1* **double** *y1* **double** *x2* **double** *y2*)

Sets a rectangular clipping region, outside which drawing operations have no effect.

dc-set-font

long (**dc-set-font long** *dc-id* **long** *font-id*)

Sets the current font for the device context. *font-id* is an ID returned from a call to *font-create* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), or zero to select any existing font out of the device context.

dc-set-logical-function

long (**dc-set-logical-function long** *dc-id* **string** *logical-function*)

Sets the current logical function for the device context. The logical function determines how pixels are changed by the drawing functions, and may be one of wxCOPY, wxXOR, wxINVERT, wxOR_REVERSE and wxAND_REVERSE.

dc-set-pen

long (**dc-set-pen long** *dc-id* **long** *pen-id*)

Sets the current pen for the device context. *pen-id* is an ID returned from a call to *pen-create* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), or zero to select any existing pen out of the device context.

dc-set-text-foreground

long (**dc-set-text-foreground long** *dc-id* **string** *colour*)

Sets the colour for the text foreground, effective when *dc-draw-text* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) is used. *colour* is a capitalized name from the list defined in the wxWindows manual.

dc-set-text-background

long (**dc-set-text-background long** *dc-id* **string** *colour*)

Sets the colour for the text background, effective when *dc-draw-text* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) is used. *colour* is a capitalized name from the list defined in the wxWindows manual.

14.17. Dialog box

See also *Overview* (page 346)

A dialog box is essentially a *panel* (page 297) with its own *frame* (page 266), and therefore shares some functions and behaviour with both of these objects.

Any panel item can be created as a child of a dialog box, and also the dialog box can be created *modal*, so that the flow of program control halts until the dialog box is dismissed.

The following callbacks are valid for the dialog box class: see also those listed for panels.

OnCharHook Under Windows only, all key strokes going to a dialog box or frame can be intercepted before being passed on for normal processing. This callback function takes the window id and event id, and should return 1 to override further processing, or 0 to do default processing. See also *Key event* (page 283).

dialog-box-create

long (**dialog-box-create long** *parent-id* **string** *title*
optional long *modal* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a dialog box. *parent-id* can be zero or a valid dialog or frame ID; *title* should be a string for the dialog box's title. The value of *modal* may be 1 (when *window-show* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) is called with an argument of 1, the dialog blocks until window-show is called with an argument of 0) or 0 (dialog is modeless, and window-show returns immediately).

The *window-show* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) function must be called with argument 1 to make the dialog visible, and with argument 0 to undisplay the dialog (and to dimiss a modal dialog).

The *style* parameter may be a combination of the following, using the bitwise 'or' operator:

wxCAPTION	Puts a caption on the dialog box (under XView and Motif this is mandatory).
wxSTAY_ON_TOP	Stay on top of other windows (Windows only).
wxSYSTEM_MENU	Display a system menu (manadatory under XView and Motif).
wxTHICK_FRAME	Display a thick frame around the window (manadatory under XView and Motif).
wxVSCROLL	Give the dialog box a vertical scrollbar (XView only).

The default value for *style* is "wxCAPTION **|** wxSYSTEM_MENU **|** wxTHICK_FRAME".

name gives the dialog box a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

dialog-box-create-from-resource

long (**dialog-box-create-from-resource long** *parent-id* **string** *resource-name*)

Creates a dialog box from the given wxWindows resource. The resource file containing this resource must first have been loaded with *load-resource-file* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

Panel items on a panel or dialog box that has been created from a resource, do not have conventional callbacks. Therefore you need to intercept the OnCommand event for the panel or dialog box and test the name and event of the item passed to this callback.

dialog-box-is-modal

long (**dialog-box-is-modal long** *parent-id*)

Returns 1 if the dialog box is modal, 0 otherwise.

dialog-box-set-modal

long (**dialog-box-set-modal long** *parent-id*, **long** *modal*)

Sets the dialog box to be modal or non-modal, before window-show is issued. Pass 1 or 0 to *modal*.

14.18. Event

An event is an 'abstract class' from which other event classes, such as mouse, key and command events, are derived.

event-get-event-type

string (**event-get-event-type long** *id*)

Returns the event type.

14.19. Font

A font is an object that can be set for a *device context* (page 258) to determine the characteristics of text drawn with *dc-draw-text* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

font-create

long (**font-create long** *point-size* **word** *family* **word** *style* **word** *weight* **long** *underlined* **optional string***facename*)

Creates a font for use in a device context.

point-size gives the font point size.

family may be one of wxROMAN, wxSCRIPT, wxDECORATIVE, wxSWISS, wxMODERN, wxDEFAULT.

style may be one of wxNORMAL, wxITALIC.

weight may be one of wxBOLD, wxLIGHT, wxNORMAL.

underlined may be 1 or 0.

facename is an optional font facename, for specifying the exact font face required.

font-delete

long (**font-delete long** *font-id*)

Deletes the given font.

14.20. Frame

A frame is a window containing text, canvas or panel subwindows. It normally has decorations added by the window manager, such as a system menu, a thick frame, and resize handles. When a wxWindows or wxCLIPS application initializes, a top-level frame must be returned to the system for successful start-up. When a top-level frame and all its children are deleted, the application terminates.

Usually an application will need to register an OnClose handler in case the window manager sends the application a close message. If the handler returns 1, the frame is deleted by the system (possibly terminating the application).

The user can register the following callbacks:

OnActivate Called with a frame identifier and integer flag, when the frame is activated. Under Windows, you may need to intercept this event and set the focus for a subwindow, or the subwindow may not receive character events. By default, wxWindows will set the focus for the first subwindow of a frame.

OnCharHook Under Windows only, all key strokes going to a dialog box or frame can be intercepted before being passed on for normal processing. This callback function takes the window id and event id, and should return 1 to override further processing, or 0 to do default processing. See also *Key event* (page 283).

OnClose The function is called with the window identifier. If the callback returns 1 and the function was called by the window manager, the window is automatically deleted (possibly terminating the application). A return value of 0 forbids automatic deletion.

OnMenuCommand Called with a frame identifier and menu item identifier. Test the menu item identifier and perform an appropriate action.

OnMenuSelect Called with a frame identifier and menu item identifier, when the cursor travels over the menu item (but the user does not click). Test the menu item identifier and perform an appropriate action.

OnSize The function is called with the window identifier, width and height.

See also *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

frame-create

long (**frame-create long** *parent-id* **string** *title*
optional long *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a frame. *parent-id* can be zero or a valid frame ID; *title* should be a string for the frame's title.

The style parameter may be a combination of the following, using the bitwise 'or' operator.

wxICONIZE	Display the frame iconized (minimized) (Windows only).
wxCAPTION	Puts a caption on the frame (under XView and Motif this is mandatory).
wxDEFAULT_FRAME	Defined as a combination of wxMINIMIZE_BOX, wxMAXIMIZE_BOX, wxTHICK_FRAME, wxSYSTEM_MENU, and wxCAPTION.
wxMDI_CHILD	Specifies a Windows MDI (multiple document interface) child frame.
wxMDI_PARENT	Specifies a Windows MDI (multiple document interface) parent frame.
wxMINIMIZE	Identical to **wxICONIZE**.
wxMINIMIZE_BOX	Displays a minimize box on the frame (Windows only).
wxMAXIMIZE	Displays the frame maximized (Windows only).
wxMAXIMIZE_BOX	Displays a maximize box on the frame (Windows only).
wxSDI	Specifies a normal SDI (single document interface) frame.
wxSTAY_ON_TOP	Stay on top of other windows (Windows only).
wxSYSTEM_MENU	Displays a system menu (manadatory under XView and Motif).
wxTHICK_FRAME	Displays a thick frame around the window (manadatory under XView and Motif).

name gives the frame a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

The function *window-show* must be called before a new frame is visible.

frame-create-status-line

long (**frame-create-status-line long** *parent-id*, **optional long** *n=1*)

Creates a status line at the bottom of the frame. Use *frame-set-status-text* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to write to the status line.

n is a number from 1 to 5 for the number of status areas to create.

frame-iconize

long (**frame-iconize long** *frame-id* **optional long** *minimize*)

Minimize the frame if the second argument is 1 or absent, restore the frame otherwise.

frame-is-iconized

long (**frame-is-iconized long** *frame-id*)

Returns 1 if the frame is iconized (minimized), 0 otherwise.

frame-on-size

long (**frame-on-size long** *frame-id* **long** *width* **long** *height*)

Performs default processing for the OnSize event. Can be called from within an OnSize callback.

frame-set-menu-bar

long (**frame-set-menu-bar long** *frame-id* **long** *menu-bar-id*)

Associate a menu bar with the frame. See *menu bar* (page 289).

frame-set-tool-bar

long (**frame-set-tool-bar long** *frame-id* **long** *tool-bar*)

Informs an MDI parent window that a panel or canvas should be treated as a toolbar, and sized accordingly. Windows only.

frame-set-icon

long (**frame-set-icon long** *frame-id* **long** *icon-id*)

Set the icon of a frame. See *icon* (page 282).

frame-set-status-text

long (**frame-set-status-text long** *frame-id* **string** *text*, **optional long** *i=0*)

Sets the text for the status line (previously created with *frame-create-status-line* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)).

i is a number from 0 to 4 for the number of the status area to write to.

frame-set-title

long (**frame-set-title long** *frame-id* **string** *text*)

Set the title of a frame.

14.21. Help

A 'help instance' is created to manage on-line help associated with one or more files. wxCLIPS supports both Windows Help under MS Windows, and wxHelp under all platforms.

Windows Help (.hlp) files may be created using a number of tools, such as Tex2RTF. wxHelp (.xlp) files can be created with a text editor or a tool such as Tex2RTF.

wxHelp is very limited in its capabilities and should only be used on platforms with no native help. Consider using HTML files instead (although you cannot currently access HTML files from your application).

help-create

long (**help-create optional long** *native = 1*)

Creates a help instance. If *native* is 1, the native help system will be invoked (such as WinHelp under MS Windows). If 0, wxHelp will be invoked.

help-delete

long (**help-delete long** *id*)

Deletes the help instance.

help-display-block

long (**help-display-block long** *id* **long** *blockId*)

Displays the help file at the given block identifier (system dependent).

help-display-contents

long (**help-display-contents long** *id* **string** *filename*)

Displays the contents of the help file currently loaded.

help-display-section

long (**help-display-section long** *id* **long** *section*)

Displays the help file at the given section (system dependent).

help-keyword-search

long (**help-keyword-search long** *id* **string** *keyword*)

Positions the help file at a section matching the given string.

help-load-file

long (**help-load-file long** *id* **string** *filename*)

Attempts to load the given file into the help instance. Use a function like help-display-contents to display the file.

14.22. HWND functions

This group of functions allows MS Windows programs to perform a few operations on another program's window.

hwnd-find

long (**hwnd-find string** *title*)

Searches for a window with the given title, and returns the window handle. Returns zero if none was found.

hwnd-iconize

long (**hwnd-iconize long** *hwnd* **optional long** *iconize=1*)

Iconizes or deiconizes the given window.

hwnd-move

long (**hwnd-move long** *hwnd* **long** *x* **long** *y* **long** *width* **long** *height* **optional long** *repaint=1*)

Moves and resizes the given window.

hwnd-refresh

long (**hwnd-refresh long** *hwnd* **optional long** *erase-background=1*)

Refreshes (invalidates) the given window.

hwnd-send-message

long (**hwnd-send-message long** *hwnd* **long** *msg* **long** *wparam* **long** *lparam*)

Sends a Windows message to the window.

hwnd-show

long (**hwnd-show long** *hwnd* **optional long** *show=1*)

Shows or hides the given window.

hwnd-quit

long (**hwnd-quit long** *hwnd*)

Sends a WM_CLOSE message to the given window.

14.23. Gauge

A gauge is used for displaying a quantity, for example amount of processing done. It must be a child of a *panel* (page 297).

gauge-create

long (**gauge-create long** *panel-id* **string** *label*
  long *range* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y*
  optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a gauge item on the given panel.

range indicates the maximum value of the gauge.

style is a *bit list* of the following:

wxGA_HORIZONTAL	The item will be created as a horizontal gauge
wxGA_VERTICAL	The item will be created as a vertical gauge.
wxGA_PROGRESSBAR	Under Windows 95, the item will be created as a horizontal progress bar.

name gives the gauge a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

gauge-set-value

long (**gauge-set-value long** *gauge-id* **long** *value*)

Set the value of a gauge item.

gauge-set-bezel-face

long (**gauge-set-bezel-face long** *gauge-id* **long** *width*)

Set the bezel parameter of the gauge (takes effect under Windows version only).

gauge-set-shadow-width

long (**gauge-set-shadow-width long** *gauge-id* **long** *width*)

Set the shadow width of the gauge (takes effect under Windows version only).

14.24. Grid

See also *Overview* (page 354)

A subwindow used for displaying grids (matrices/tables). A grid can contain text or bitmaps.

Note: this functionality is implemented in Windows only, for the time being.

The following callbacks are valid for the grid class.

OnPaint Called with a window identifier when the window receives a repaint event from the window manager.
OnSize The function is called with the window identifier, width and height.
OnCellLeftClick The function is called with the window identifier, row, column, x, y, control down flag, shift down flag.
OnCellRightClick The function is called with the window identifier, row, column, x, y, control down flag, shift down flag.
OnCellChange The function is called with the window identifier, row, column.
OnChangeLabels The function is called with the window identifier.
OnChangeSelectionLabel The function is called with the window identifier.

See also *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

grid-adjust-scrollbars

void (**grid-adjust-scrollbars long** *grid-id*)

Adjusts the scrollbars to suit the size of the grid: this may cause one or both to be hidden. You may wish to call this from code which alters the number of rows or columns (or height/width of rows or columns), or from an OnSize callback.

grid-append-cols

long (**grid-append-cols long** *grid-id* **long** *n* **optional long** *update-labels=1*) Inserts *n* columns at the end of the table, updating the grid labels if *update-labels* is 1.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

grid-append-rows

long (**grid-append-rows long** *grid-id* **long** *n* **optional long** *update-labels=1*) Inserts *n* rows at the end of the table, updating the grid labels if *update-labels* is 1.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

grid-clear-grid

void (**grid-clear-grid long** *grid-id*)

Clears the grid (untested).

grid-create

long (**grid-create long** *parent-id* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y*
  optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style=0* **optional string** *name="grid"*)

Creates a grid window. You must also call grid-create-grid after you call this function.

parent-id must be a valid frame ID.

name gives the canvas a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

grid-create-grid

long (**grid-create-grid long** *grid-id* **long** *rows* **long** *cols*
  optional long *default-width* **optional long** *default-height*)

Initializes the size of the grid. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

grid-delete-cols

long (**grid-delete-cols long** *grid-id* **long** *position* **long** *n* **optional long** *update-labels=1*) Deletes *n* columns starting at *position*, updating the grid labels if *update-labels* is 1.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

grid-delete-rows

long (**grid-delete-rows long** *grid-id* **long** *position* **long** *n* **optional long** *update-labels=1*)
Deletes *n* rows starting at *position*, updating the grid labels if *update-labels* is 1.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

grid-get-cell-alignment

string (**grid-get-cell-alignment long** *grid-id* **long** *row* **long** *col*) Gets the cell text alignment at *row*, *col*. The return value is one of wxLEFT, wxRIGHT, wxCENTRE.

grid-get-cell-background-colour

long (**grid-set-cell-background-colour long** *grid-id* **optional long** *row=-1* **optional long** *col=-1*)
Gets the cell background colour.

The return value is a colour value of the kind created using *colour-create*.

If *row* and *col* are zero or greater, the returned colour is that of an individual cell. If these values are -1 or absent, the colour is the global, default cell background colour.

grid-get-cell-bitmap

long (**grid-get-cell-bitmap long** *grid-id* **long** *row* **long** *col*) Returns the bitmap associated with the cell at *row*, *col*. If none has been set, 0 will be returned. See also *grid-set-cell-bitmap* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

grid-get-cell-text-colour

long (**grid-set-cell-text-colour long** *grid-id* **optional long** *row=-1* **optional long** *col=-1*) Gets the cell text colour.

The return value is a colour value of the kind created using *colour-create*.

If *row* and *col* are zero or greater, the returned colour is that of an individual cell. If these values are -1 or absent, the colour is the global, default cell text colour.

grid-get-cell-value

string (**grid-get-cell-value long** *grid-id* **long** *row* **long** *col*) Gets the cell value at *row*, *col*.

grid-get-column-width

long (**grid-get-column-width long** *grid-id* **long** *col*) Gets the given column width in pixels.

grid-get-cursor-column

long (**grid-get-cursor-column long** *grid-id*) Returns the column of the currently selected cell.

grid-get-cursor-row

long (**grid-get-cursor-row long** *grid-id*) Returns the row of the currently selected cell.

grid-get-rows

long (**grid-get-rows long** *grid-id*)

Returns the number of rows in the grid.

grid-get-cols

long (**grid-get-cols long** *grid-id*)

Returns the number of columns in the grid.

grid-get-editable

long (**grid-get-editable long** *grid-id*)

Returns 1 if the grid is editable (the text field is showing), 0 otherwise.

grid-get-label-alignment

string (**grid-get-label-alignment long** *grid-id* **string** *orientation*) Gets the column label or row label alignment.

If *orientation* is wxVERTICAL, the row label alignment is returned. If *orientation* is wxHORIZONTAL, the column label alignment is returned.

The return value is one of wxLEFT, wxRIGHT, wxCENTRE.

grid-get-label-background-colour

long (**grid-get-label-background-colour long** *grid-id*) Gets the label background colour.

The return value is a colour value of the kind created using *colour-create*.

grid-get-label-size

long (**grid-get-label-size long** *grid-id* **string** *orientation*) Gets the column label height or row label width in pixels. If *orientation* is wxVERTICAL, the row label width is returned. If *orientation* is wxHORIZONTAL, the column label height is returned.

grid-get-label-text-colour

long (**grid-get-label-text-colour long** *grid-id*) Gets the label text colour.

The return value is a colour value of the kind created using *colour-create*.

grid-get-label-value

string (**grid-get-label-value long** *grid-id* **string** *orientation* **long** *position*) *position* is the label row or column position (starting from zero).

Gets a column label or row label value.

If *orientation* is wxVERTICAL, the row label alignment is set. If *orientation* is wxHORIZONTAL, the column label alignment is set.

grid-get-row-height

long (**grid-get-row-height long** *grid-id* **long** *row*) Gets the given row height in pixels.

grid-get-scroll-pos-x

long (**grid-get-scroll-pos-x long** *grid-id*)

Returns the current scroll position in the horizontal dimension (in scroll positions, not pixels).

grid-get-scroll-pos-y

long (**grid-get-scroll-pos-y long** *grid-id*)

Returns the current scroll position in the vertical dimension (in scroll positions, not pixels).

grid-get-text-item

long (**grid-get-text-item long** *grid-id*)

Returns the identifier of the text item which is used for editing cells. Use this to set the label of the text item, for example, in an OnChangeSelectionLabel callback, which is called when the user selects a different cell.

grid-insert-cols

long (**grid-insert-cols long** *grid-id* **long** *position* **long** *n* **optional long** *update-labels=1*) Inserts *n* columns in front of *position*, updating the grid labels if *update-labels* is 1.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

grid-insert-rows

long (**grid-insert-rows long** *grid-id* **long** *position* **long** *n* **optional long** *update-labels=1*) Inserts *n* rows in front of *position*, updating the grid labels if *update-labels* is 1.

Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

grid-on-activate

void (**grid-on-activate long** *grid-id* **long** *active*)

Call this function from a frame OnActivate callback. This function causes focus to be given to the text field (if in editable mode).

grid-on-paint

void (**grid-on-paint long** *grid-id*)

Call this function if you override the on-paint event handler.

grid-on-size

void (**grid-on-size long** *grid-id* **long** *w* **long** *h*)

Call this function if you override the on-size event handler.

grid-set-cell-alignment

void (**grid-set-cell-alignment long** *grid-id* **string** *alignment* **long** *row* **long** *col*) Sets the cell text alignment at *row*, *col* to the given value. *alignment* should be one of wxLEFT, wxRIGHT, wxCENTRE.

grid-set-cell-background-colour

void (**grid-set-cell-background-colour long** *grid-id* **long** *colour* **optional long** *row=-1* **optional long** *col=-1*) Sets the cell background colour.

colour should be a colour value created with *colour-create*.

If *row* and *col* are zero or greater, the colour will be associated with an individual cell. If these values are -1 or absent, the colour will refer to all cells.

grid-set-cell-bitmap

void (**grid-set-cell-bitmap long** *grid-id* **long** *bitmap-id* **long** *row* **long** *col*) Associates a bitmap with the cell at *row*, *col*. If this is called, the bitmap will be displayed instead of text. Since colourmaps are not used in drawing the bitmap, use low-colour bitmaps if possible (16 colours or less).

grid-set-cell-text-colour

void (**grid-set-cell-text-colour long** *grid-id* **long** *colour* **optional long** *row=-1* **optional long** *col=-1*) Sets the cell text colour.

colour should be a colour value created with *colour-create*.

If *row* and *col* are zero or greater, the colour will be associated with an individual cell. If these values are -1 or absent, the colour will refer to all cells.

grid-set-cell-text-font

void (**grid-set-cell-text-font long** *grid-id* **long** *font-id* **optional long** *row=-1* **optional long** *col=-1*) Sets the cell text font.

font should be a valid font identifier.

If *row* and *col* are zero or greater, the font will be associated with an individual cell. If these values are -1 or absent, the font will refer to all cells.

grid-set-cell-value

void (**grid-set-cell-value long** *grid-id* **string** *value* **long** *row* **long** *col*) Sets the cell at *row*, *col* to the given value.

grid-set-column-width

void (**grid-set-column-width long** *grid-id* **long** *col* **long** *width*) Sets the given column width in pixels.

grid-set-divider-pen

void (**grid-set-divider-pen long** *grid-id* **long** *pen-id*)

Sets the pen for drawing the cell divisions (light grey by default). If *pen-id* is 0, the divisions are switched off.

grid-set-editable

void (**grid-set-editable long** *grid-id* **long** *editable*)

If *editable* is 1, displays the text field for entering cell values. If *editable* is 0, hides the text field.

grid-set-grid-cursor

void (**grid-set-grid-cursor long** *grid-id* **long***row* **long***column*) Sets the selection to the given cell.

grid-set-label-alignment

void (**grid-set-label-alignment long** *grid-id* **string** *orientation* **string** *alignment*) Sets the column label or row label alignment.

If *orientation* is wxVERTICAL, the row label alignment is set. If *orientation* is wxHORIZONTAL, the column label alignment is set.

alignment should be one of wxLEFT, wxRIGHT, wxCENTRE.

grid-set-label-background-colour

void (**grid-set-label-background-colour long** *grid-id* **long** *colour*) Sets the label background colour.

colour should be a colour value created with *colour-create*.

grid-set-label-size

void (**grid-set-label-size long** *grid-id* **string** *orientation* **long** *size*) Sets the column label height or row label width in pixels. If *orientation* is wxVERTICAL, the row label width is set. If *orientation* is wxHORIZONTAL, the column label height is set.

A value of zero switches off the label in the specified dimension.

grid-set-label-text-colour

void (**grid-set-label-text-colour long** *grid-id* **long** *colour*) Sets the label text colour.

colour should be a colour value created with *colour-create*.

grid-set-label-text-font

void (**grid-set-label-text-font long** *grid-id* **long** *font-id*) Sets the label text font.

grid-set-label-value

void (**grid-set-label-value long** *grid-id* **string** *orientation* **string** *value* **long** *position*)

Sets a column label or row label value.

If *orientation* is wxVERTICAL, the row label alignment is set. If *orientation* is wxHORIZONTAL, the column label alignment is set.

position is the label row or column position (starting from zero).

grid-set-row-height

void (**grid-set-row-height long** *grid-id* **long** *row* **long** *height*) Sets the given row height in pixels.

grid-update-dimensions

void (**grid-update-dimensions long** *grid-id*)

Recalculates dimensions so drawing is accurate. You may wish to call this if you alter a grid dimension, such as column width.

14.25. Groupbox

A group box is a box drawn around one or more controls. Available under Windows only.

group-box-create

long (**group-box-create long** *panel-id* **string** *label*
long *x* **long** *y* **long** *width* **long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a group box and returns its id.

name gives the group box a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

14.26. Html

A subwindow used for displaying HTML files, using a class library written by Andrew Davison. At present only local HTML files should be loaded, and links in HTML files should again be local files, with non-URL specifications. Later releases will eventually allow Web browsing functionality, but to simplify wxCLIPS installation, this functionality has been omitted.

There are some bugs in scrolling and presentation, but for simple needs, it may prove handy to be able to show text and graphics (GIF files).

Note: this functionality is implemented in Windows only for the time being, and even then, not in all Windows releases of wxCLIPS and Hardy.

The following callbacks are valid for the html class.

OnSize The function is called with the window identifier, width and height.
OnOpenURL The function is called just before a URL is about to be opened, with the window identifier, and a URL. Return 1 to allow default processing, 0 to veto further processing. You can use this to program special URLs as buttons, if you test the URL and return 0 if you will process it yourself.
OnSetStatusText This is called with the window identifier and text, whenever it is appropriate to notify the user of the URL the mouse is over.

See also *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

html-back

void (**html-back long** *id*)

Loads and displays the previously-displayed URL or file.

html-cancel

void (**html-cancel long** *id*)

Sets a flag to cancel the current operation.

html-clear-cache

void (**html-clear-cache long** *id*)

Clears the internal cache.

html-create

long (**html-create long** *parent-id* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style=0* **optional string**
name="html")

Creates an HTML window.

parent-id must be a valid frame ID.

name gives the canvas a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

html-get-current-url

string (**html-get-current-url long** *id*) Returns the current URL.

html-on-size

void (**html-on-size long** *id* **long** *width* **long** *height*)

Invokes the HTML panel's OnSize member. This may need to be called if you override OnSize.

html-open-file

long (**html-open-file long** *id* **string** *file*) Opens and displays a file.

html-resize

void (**html-resize long** *id*)

Resizes and displays the current file.

html-save-file

long (**html-save-file long** *id* **string** *file*)   Saves the currently displayed file.

html-open-url

long (**html-open-url long** *id* **string** *url*)

Opens a URL (not yet functioning).14.27. Icon

An icon is a small bitmap which can be used to decorate a minimized frame. There are platform-specific ways of creating an icon.

icon-create

long (**icon-create string** *fileOrResource*)

Creates an icon. Under X, the argument must be the filename of a valid XBM (X bitmap) file. Under Windows, the argument must be the name of an icon resource compiled into the current executable.

Use *frame-set-icon* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to set the icon of a frame.

icon-delete

long (**icon-delete long** *icon-id*)

Deletes the given icon.

icon-get-height

long (**icon-get-height long** *icon-id*)

Gets the height of the icon.

icon-get-width

long (**icon-get-width long** *icon-id*)

Gets the width of the icon.

icon-load-from-file

long (**icon-load-from-file string** *file*, **string** *bitmap-type*)

Loads an icon from a file. Under X, the argument must be the filename of a valid XBM (X bitmap) file. Under Windows, the argument must be the filename of a Windows icon file.

Under X, the permitted icon types in the *bitmap-type* are:

- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_BMP** Load a Windows bitmap file (if USE_IMAGE_LOADING_IN_X is enabled in wx_setup.h).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_GIF** Load a GIF bitmap file (if USE_IMAGE_LOADING_IN_X is enabled in wx_setup.h).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_XBM** Load an X bitmap file.
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_XPM** Load an XPM (colour pixmap) file. Only available if USE_XPM_IN_X is enabled in wx_setup.h.

Under Windows, the permitted types are:

- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_ICO** Load a cursor from a .ico icon file (only if USE_RESOURCE_LOADING_IN_MSW is enabled in wx_setup.h).
- **wxBITMAP_TYPE_ICO_RESOURCE** Load a Windows resource (as specified in the .rc file).

14.28. Instance table

wxCLIPS provides some functions for mapping between the integer identifiers used to represent objects in wxCLIPS funtions, and COOL instance names. When creating object-oriented wrappers around wxCLIPS function groups, you can add an instance name entry in the **init** handler, and delete it in the **delete** handler. For each event, you can register a callback which retrieves the instance name from the identifier passed to the callback, and sends an appropriate message to that instance.

See also *wxclips-object-exists* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

instance-table-add-entry

long (**instance-table-add-entry long** *id* **instance** *instance-name*)

Adds an entry to the instance table, indexing on the integer id.

instance-table-delete-entry

long (**instance-table-delete-entry long** *id*)

Deletes an entry from the instance table.

instance-table-get-instance

instance-name (**instance-table-get-instance long** *id*)

Retrieves an instance name for the integer id.

14.29. Key event

A key event identifier is passed to a window's OnChar or OnCharHook callback. The key code, position and state of shift/control/alt can be examined by calling the following functions.

key-event-alt-down

long (**key-event-alt-down long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if alt was pressed.

key-event-control-down

long (**key-event-control-down long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if control was pressed.

key-event-get-key-code

string (**key-event-get-key-code long** *event-id*)

Returns a string corresponding to the internal wxWindows key code, such as "WXK_BACK", "WXK_F1" or "WXK_RETURN".

key-event-position-x

double (**key-event-position-x long** *event-id*)

Gets the x position of the mouse pointer at the moment the key was pressed.

key-event-position-y

double (**key-event-position-y long** *event-id*)

Gets the y position of the mouse pointer at the moment the key was pressed.

key-event-shift-down

long (**key-event-shift-down long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if shift was pressed.

14.30. Listbox

A listbox displays a choice of strings. It must be the child of a *panel* (page 297). In a single-selection listbox, only one choice may be highlighted. In a multiple-selection listbox, several may be highlighted.

list-box-create

long (**list-box-create long** *panel-id* **string** *callback* **string** *label*
long *multiple*, **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a list box item on the given panel. The callback may be the empty string ("") to denote no callback, or a word or string for the function name. The function will be called when an item in the list box is selected or deselected, with the list box ID as argument. The value of *multiple* should be 1 if multiple selections are required, or 0 if only a single selection is required.

style is a *bit list* of some of the following:

wxNEEDED_SB	Create scrollbars if needed.
wxALWAYS_SB	Create scrollbars immediately.
wxHSCROLL	Create horizontal scrollbar if contents are two wide (Windows only).

name gives the group box a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

list-box-append

long (**list-box-append long** *list-box-id* **string** *item*
optional string *client-data*)

Append a string to the list box, with an optional client data string.

list-box-find-string

long (**list-box-find-string long** *list-box-id* **string** *item*)

Find the string in the list box and return the integer position if found, -1 if not.

list-box-clear

long (**list-box-clear long** *list-box-id*)

Clear all strings from the list box.

list-box-get-selection

long (**list-box-get-selection long** *list-box-id*)

Get the position of the selection (for single-selection list boxes only).

list-box-get-string-selection

string (**list-box-get-string-selection long** *list-box-id*)

Get the selected string (for single-selection list boxes only).

list-box-is-selected

long (**list-box-is-selected long** *list-box-id* **long** *item*)

Returns 1 if *item* is selected, 0 otherwise.

list-box-set-selection

long (**list-box-set-selection long** *list-box-id* **long** *item-pos* **long** *flag=1*)

Set a selection by item position.

If *flag* is 1, the item is selected, otherwise it is deselected.

list-box-set-string-selection

long (**list-box-set-string-selection long** *list-box-id* **string** *item*)

Set a selection by string.

list-box-number

long (**list-box-number long** *list-box-id*)

Return the number of items in the list box.

list-box-delete

long (**list-box-delete long** *list-box-id* **long** *item-pos*)

Delete an item in the list box.

list-box-get-string

string (**list-box-get-string long** *list-box-id* **long** *item-pos*)

Return the string at the given position.

list-box-get-first-selection

long (**list-box-get-first-selection long** *list-box-id*)

Get the first selection position in a multi-selection list box (-1 for no more selections).

list-box-get-next-selection

long (**list-box-get-next-selection**)

Get the next selection position in a multi-selection list box (-1 for no more selections).

14.31. Memory device context

A memory device context is used for drawing into, or copying from, a bitmap. See also the *Bitmap* (page 236) object.

memory-dc-create

long (**memory-dc-create**)

Create a memory device context and returns its ID.

memory-dc-select-object

long (**memory-dc-select-object long** *id* **long** *bitmap-id*)

Makes this device context the drawing surface for the given bitmap (see *Bitmap* (page 236)). Deleting the memory device context disassociates the bitmap, freeing it to be used with another memory device context. To draw a bitmap on a device context that supports bitmap drawing (i.e. not a Metafile or PostScript device context), using code like the following:

```
  ;;; Utility function for drawing a bitmap
  (deffunction draw-bitmap (?dc ?bitmap ?x ?y)
   (bind ?mem-dc (memory-dc-create))
   (memory-dc-select-object ?mem-dc ?bitmap)
   ; Blit the memory device context onto the destination device context
   (dc-blit ?dc ?x ?y (bitmap-get-width ?bitmap) (bitmap-get-height
?bitmap)
     ?mem-dc 0.0 0.0)
   (memory-dc-delete ?mem-dc)
  )
```

If *bitmap-id* is zero, the existing bitmap (if any) will be selected out of the device context. This might be necessary if you wish to delete the bitmap before deleting the device context (for example, for reusing the same device context for different bitmaps).

14.32. Menu

The menu is used only as a component of a *menu bar* (page 289). Create menus, append menu items (strings, separators or further menus), and finally append the menu to the menu bar.

A menu or menu bar string may contain an ampersand, which is taken to mean 'underline the next character and use it as the hotkey'. This gives the user the opportunity to use keystrokes to access menus and items.

menu-create

long (**menu-create optional string** *label* **optional string** *callback*)

Create a menu and returns the menu's ID.

label is unused at present.

callback should be present if creating a popup menu (i.e. not a menubar menu). It will be called with the menu's id when the user selects an item. From within the callback, use *panel-item-get-command-event* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to retrieve the command event and from that, the menu item selection.

menu-append

long (**menu-append long** *menu-id* **long** *item-id*
string *item-string* **optional long** *submenu-id* **optional string** *help-string* **optional long** *checkable*)

Append a string or submenu to the menu, passing the integer ID by which the menu item will be referenced, a string to be displayed, an optional id for a pullright menu, and an optional flag for specifying whether this menu item can be checked.

A help string can be supplied, in which case the string will be shown on the first field of the status line (if any) in the frame containing the menu bar, when the mouse pointer moves over the menu item.

menu-append-separator

long (**menu-append-separator long** *menu-id*)

Append a menu separator.

menu-break

long (**menu-break long** *menu-id*)

Inserts a column break into the menu.

menu-check

long (**menu-check long** *menu-id* **long** *item-id* **long** *check*)

Check (*check = 1* or uncheck *check = 0* the given menu item. MS Windows only.

menu-enable

long (**menu-enable long** *menu-id* **long** *item-id* **long** *enable*)

Enable (*enable = 1* or disable *enable = 0* the given menu item.

14.33. Menu bar

A menu bar is a standard user interface element which places the main commands of an application along the top of a *frame* (page 266).

The menu bar must be assigned to a frame using *frame-set-menu-bar* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**). Once this is done, the menu bar must not be deleted by the application: it will be deleted when the frame is deleted.

A menu or menu bar string may contain an ampersand, which is taken to mean 'underline the next character and use it as the hotkey'. This gives the user the opportunity to use keystrokes to access menus and items.

See also *Menu* (page 287).

menu-bar-create

long (**menu-bar-create**)

Create a menu bar and return its ID.

menu-bar-create-from-resource

long (**menu-bar-create-from-resource string** *resource-name*)

Create a menu bar and return its ID, given a resource name.

The resource file containing this resource must first have been loaded with *load-resource-file* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

menu-bar-append

long (**menu-bar-append long** *menu-bar-id* **long** *menu-id* **string** *title*)

Append a menu to a menu bar.

menu-bar-check

long (**menu-bar-check long** *menu-bar-id* **long** *item-id* **long** *check*)

Check (*check = 1*) or uncheck (*check = 0*) the given menu item (MS Windows only).

menu-bar-checked

long (**menu-bar-checked long** *menu-bar-id* **long** *item-id*)

Returns 1 if the menu item is checked, 0 otherwise.

menu-bar-enable

long (**menu-bar-enable long** *menu-bar-id* **long** *item-id* **long** *enable*)

Enable (*enable = 1*) or disable (*enable = 0*) the given menu item.

14.34. Message

A message is a simple piece of text on a *panel* (page 297).

message-create

long (**message-create long** *panel-id* **string** *label*
optional long *x* **optional long** *y*
optional string *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a message item on the given panel (a simple, non-selectable, non-editable string). If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

style is reserved for future use.

name gives the message a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

message-create-from-bitmap

long (**message-create-from-bitmap long** *panel-id* **long** *bitmap-id*
optional long *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a bitmap message given a valid bitmap identifier.

name gives the message a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

14.35. Metafile

A metafile is the Windows vector format. Currently, the only way of creating a Windows metafile is to close a metafile device context, and the only valid operations are to delete the metafile and to place it on the clipboard.

These functions are only available under Windows.

14.35.1. Example

Below is a example of metafle, metafile device context and clipboard use. Note the way the metafile dimensions are passed to the clipboard, making use of the device context's ability to keep track of the maximum extent of drawing commands.

```
(bind ?dc (metafile-dc-create))
(if (eq (dc-ok ?dc) 1) then
    (
      ; Do some drawing
      (bind ?mf (metafile-dc-close ?dc))
      (if (neq ?mf 0) then
       ; Pass metafile to the clipboard
       (metafile-set-clipboard ?mf (dc-get-max-x ?dc) (dc-get-max-y
?dc))
       (metafile-delete ?mf)
      )
    )
  )
  (dc-delete ?dc)
```

metafile-delete

long (**metafile-delete long** *id*)

Deletes the metafile.

metafile-set-clipboard

long (**metafile-set-clipboard long** *id* **int** *width* **int** *height*)

Places the metafile on the clipboard, returning 1 for success and 0 for failure.

The metafile should be deleted immediately after this operation.

14.36. Metafile device context

A metafile device context is used for creating a metafile. The programmer should create the metafile device context, close it to return a metafile, delete the device context, use the metafile (the only valid thing to do with it currently is to place it on the clipboard, and then delete the metafile.

These functions are only available under Windows.

See also *Metafile* (page 290).

metafile-dc-create

long (**metafile-dc-create optional string** *filename*)

Creates a metafile device context and returns its ID.

filename is the file to be used if creating a disk-based metafile. Usually this will be zero or absent, and an in-memory metafile will be created.

metafile-dc-close

long (**metafile-dc-close long** *id*)

Closes the metafile device context and returns a metafile. The device context should no longer be used after this call is made, and it should be deleted.

See *Metafile* (page 290).

14.37. Mouse event

A mouse event identifier is passed to the canvas *OnEvent* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) callback. The state of the mouse buttons (and some keys) can be examined by calling the following functions.

mouse-event-button

long (**mouse-event-button long** *event-id* **long** *button*)

Returns 1 if the given button is changing state. *button* may be 1, 2 or 3 (left, middle and right buttons respectively).

mouse-event-button-down

long (**mouse-event-button-down long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the event is a mouse button down event.

mouse-event-control-down

long (**mouse-event-control-down long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the control key is down.

mouse-event-dragging

long (**mouse-event-dragging long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the event is a dragging event (holding a mouse button down and moving).

mouse-event-left-down

long (**mouse-event-left-down long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the left mouse button is down.

mouse-event-left-up

long (**mouse-event-left-up long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the left mouse button is up.

mouse-event-is-button

long (**mouse-event-is-button long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the event is a button press or release.

mouse-event-middle-down

long (**mouse-event-middle-down long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the middle mouse button is down.

mouse-event-middle-up

long (**mouse-event-middle-up long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the middle mouse button is up.

mouse-event-position-x

double (**mouse-event-position-x long** *event-id*)

Returns the mouse x-position.

mouse-event-position-y

double (**mouse-event-position-y long** *event-id*)

Returns the mouse y-position.

mouse-event-right-down

long (**mouse-event-right-down long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the right mouse button is down.

mouse-event-right-up

long (**mouse-event-right-up long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the right mouse button is up.

mouse-event-shift-down

long (**mouse-event-shift-down long** *event-id*)

Returns 1 if the shift key is down.

14.38. Multi-line text

A multi-line text item is able to show several lines of text, unlike the single line *text* (page 309) item. It must be the child of a *panel* (page 297).

Under Windows, there is an extended range of functions. Some take character positions - a single integer which can identify a character position - and others take line and character numbers. If you want to use a function that takes one form, but you only have the other, you can convert between them using a function such as multi-text-xy-to-position or multi-text-position-to-line. Note that line and character numbers start from zero.

multi-text-create

long (**multi-text-create long** *panel-id* **string** *callback* **string** *label*
optional string *value* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a multi-line text item on the given panel. The callback may be the empty string ("") to denote no callback, or a word or string for the function name. The function will be called when return is pressed in the text item, with the text item ID as argument. The default value is optional.

If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

The *style* parameter can be a *bit list* of the following:

wxHSCROLL	A horizontal scrollbar will be displayed. If wxHSCROLL is omitted, only a vertical scrollbar is displayed, and lines will be wrapped. This parameter is ignored under XView.
wxREADONLY	The text is read-only (not XView).

name gives the multitext a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

multi-text-copy

long (**multi-text-copy long** *window-id*)

Copies the selected text to the clipboard. Windows only.

multi-text-cut

long (**multi-text-cut long** *window-id*)

Copies the selected text to the clipboard, then removes the selection. Windows only.

multi-text-get-insertion-point

long (**multi-text-get-insertion-point long** *window-id*)

Returns the insertion point. Windows only.

multi-text-get-last-position

long (**multi-text-get-last-position long** *window-id*)

Returns the final position in the text window. Windows only.

multi-text-get-line-length

long (**multi-text-get-line-length long** *window-id* **long** *line-no*)

Returns the length of the text at line *line-no*. Windows only.

multi-text-get-line-length

long (**multi-text-get-line-text long** *window-id* **long** *line-no*)

Returns the text at *line-no*.

multi-text-get-number-of-lines

long (**multi-text-get-number-of-lines long** *window-id*)

Returns the number of lines in the text window. Windows only.

multi-text-get-value

string (**multi-text-get-value long** *multi-text-item*)

Get the multi-text item's string value.

multi-text-set-value

long (**multi-text-set-value long** *multi-text-item* **string** *value*)

Set the multi-text item's string value.

multi-text-paste

long (**multi-text-paste long** *window-id*)

Pastes the text (if any) from the clipboard to the text window. Windows only.

multi-text-position-to-char

long (**multi-text-position-to-char long** *window-id* **long** *pos*)

Returns the character position (starting from zero) for the given index position. Windows only.

multi-text-position-to-line

long (**multi-text-position-to-line long** *window-id* **long** *pos*)

Returns the line number (starting from zero) for the given index position. Windows only.

multi-text-remove

long (**multi-text-remove long** *window-id* **long** *start-pos* **long** *end-pos*)

Removes the text between the given span selection. Windows only.

multi-text-replace

long (**multi-text-replace long** *window-id* **long** *start-pos* **long** *end-pos* **string** *text*)

Replaces the text between the given span selection with the given text.

multi-text-set-insertion-point

long (**multi-text-set-insertion-point long** *window-id* **long** *pos*)

Sets the insertion point to the given index position. Windows only.

multi-text-set-selection

long (**multi-text-set-selection long** *window-id* **long** *start-pos* **long** *end-pos*)

Sets the selection to the given span of text. Windows only.

multi-text-show-position

long (**multi-text-show-position long** *window-id* **long** *pos*)

Shows the text at the given index position. Windows only.

multi-text-write

long (**multi-text-write long** *window-id* **string** *text*)

Writes the given string into the multitext, at the current cursor point. Windows only.

multi-text-xy-to-position

long (**multi-text-xy-to-position long** *window-id* **long** *char-position* **long** *line*)

Converts the character and line number (each starting from zero) to a position.

14.39. Object

An object is a general term for any wxCLIPS entity, such as window, brush, pen, listbox, etc.

object-delete

long (**object-delete long** *id*)

Deletes an object.

object-get-type

char * (**object-get-type long** *id*)

Returns the C++ class name for the object.

14.40. Panel

A panel is a subwindow for placing panel items, such as *buttons* (page 238) and *text items* (page 309). Its parent must be a *frame* (page 266). A panel inherits most properties from canvas, except for scrollbar functionality.

Note that a *dialog box* (page 264) may be used in a similar way to a panel.

The following callbacks are valid for the panel class:

- **OnCommand** Called with a panel identifier, an item identifier and a command event identifier when a command event is received by a panel item that does not have an associated callback. If you have created a panel or dialog box from a resource, you will need to intercept OnCommand.
- **OnDefaultAction** Called with a panel identifier and an item identifier, when a double click has been received from a listbox.
- **OnEvent** Called with a panel identifier and a *mouse event* (page 292) identifier. This can only be guaranteed only when the panel is in user edit mode (to be implemented).
- **OnPaint** Called with a panel identifier when the panel receives a repaint event from the window manager.
- **OnSize** The function is called with the window identifier, width and height.

See also *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

panel-create

long (**panel-create long** *parent-id* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y* **optional long** *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a panel. *parent-id* must be a valid frame ID.

The *style* parameter may be a combination of the following, using the bitwise 'or' operator.

wxABSOLUTE_POSITIONING	A hint to the windowing system not to try native Windowing system layout (Motif only). This is the recommended style for all Motif panels and dialog boxes.
wxBORDER	Draws a thin border around the panel.
wxVSCROLL	Gives the dialog box a vertical scrollbar (XView only).

name gives the panel a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

panel-create-from-resource

long (**panel-create-from-resource long** *parent-id* **string** *resource-name*)

Creates a panel from the given wxWindows resource. The resource file containing this resource must first have been loaded with *load-resource-file* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

Panel items on a panel or dialog box that has been created from a resource, do not have conventional callbacks. Therefore you need to intercept the OnCommand event for the panel or dialog box and test the name and event of the item passed to this callback.

panel-set-button-font

long (**panel-set-button-font long** *panel-id* **long** *font-id*)

Sets the font used for panel or dialog box item buttons (or contents). See also *panel-set-label-font* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

panel-set-label-font

long (**panel-set-label-font long** *panel-id* **long** *font-id*)

Sets the font used for panel or dialog box item labels. See also *panel-set-button-font* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

panel-set-label-position

long (**panel-set-label-position long** *panel-id* **string** *position*)

Change the current label orientation for panel items: *position* may be wxVERTICAL or wxHORIZONTAL.

panel-new-line

long (**panel-new-line long** *panel-id*)

Insert a new line, that is, make subsequent panel items appear at the start of the next line.

14.41. Panel item

A panel item is a control (or widget) that can be placed on a *panel* (page 297) to accept user input, and display information.

The following functions apply to panel items, which include *button* (page 238), *checkbox* (page 243), *choice* (page 243), *message* (page 290), *text* (page 309), *multi-line text* (page 294), *slider* (page 309).

panel-item-get-command-event

long (**panel-item-get-command-event**)

Returns the identifier of the command event for the current panel item or menu callback, or zero if not called within a callback.

panel-item-get-label

string (**panel-item-get-label long** *panel-id*)

Get the item's label.

panel-item-set-default

long (**panel-item-set-default long** *panel-id*)

Make this item the default.

panel-item-set-label

long (**panel-item-set-label long** *panel-id* **string** *label*)

Set the item's label.

14.42. Pen

A pen is used to control the colour and style of subsequent drawing operations on a *device context* (page 258).

pen-create

long (**pen-create string** *colour* **long** *width* **word** *style*)

long (**pen-create long** *colour-value* **long** *width* **word** *style*)

Creates a pen for use in a device context. A pen is used for the outlines of graphic shapes. A brush must be set to fill the shapes.

colour is a wxWindows colour string such as "BLACK", "CYAN".

colour-value is a value returned from *colour-create* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

width specifies the width of the pen.

style may be one of wxSOLID, wxDOT, wxLONG_DASH, wxSHORT_DASH, wxTRANSPARENT.

pen-delete

long (**pen-delete long** *pen-id*)

Deletes the given pen.

14.43. PostScript device context

A PostScript device context is used for drawing into a postscript file.

postscript-dc-create

long (**postscript-dc-create optional string** *file*
optional long *interactive* **optional long** *window-id*)

Creates a postscript device context and returns its ID.

file is the file to be used for printing to. *interactive* may be 1 to popup up a printer dialog, or 0 otherwise. *window-id* is a parent window for the printer dialog.

14.44. Printer device context

A Printer device context is used for drawing onto a Windows printer.

printer-dc-create

long (**printer-dc-create optional string** *driver* **optional string** *device*
optional string *filename* **optional long** *interactive*)

Creates a printer device context and returns its ID.

file is the file to be used for printing to. *interactive* may be 1 to popup up a printer dialog, or 0 otherwise.

14.45. Radiobox

A radiobox item is a matrix of strings with associated radio buttons. The buttons are mutually exclusive, so pressing one will deselect the current selection.

radio-box-create

long (**radio-box-create long** *panel-id* **string** *callback* **string** *label*
long *x* **long** *y* **long** *width* **long** *height*
multivalue *strings* **long** *major-dimension* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a radiobox item on the given panel. The callback may be the empty string ("") to denote no callback, or a word or string for the function name. The function will be called when an item in the radiobox is selected, with the radiobox ID as argument. If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

strings should be a multifield of strings.

major-dimension specifies the number of rows (if style is wxVERTICAL) or columns (if style is wxHORIZONTAL) for a two-dimensional radiobox.

style specifies a *bit list* of styles.

wxVERTICAL	Lays the radiobox out in columns.
wxHORIZONTAL	Lays the radiobox out in rows.

name gives the radiobox a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

radio-box-get-selection

long (**radio-box-get-selection long** *radio-box-id*)

Get the ID of the button currently selected.

radio-box-set-selection

long (**radio-box-set-selection long** *radio-box-id* **long** *item*)

Sets the given button to be the current selection.

14.46. Recordset

See also *Database classes overview* (page 349)

Each recordset represents an ODBC database query. You can make multiple queries at a time by using multiple recordsets with a database or you can make your queries in sequential order using the same recordset.

recordset-create

long (**recordset-create long** *db* **optional string** *type = "wxOPEN_TYPE_DYNASET"* **optional string** *options = "wxOPTION_DEFAULT"*)

Constructs a recordset object and returns its id. *db* is a pointer to the database instance you wish to use the recordset with. Currently there are two possible values of *type*:

- "wxOPEN_TYPE_DYNASET": Loads only one record at a time into memory. The other data of the result set will be loaded dynamically when moving the cursor. This is the default type.
- "wxOPEN_TYPE_SNAPSHOT": Loads all records of a result set at once. This will need much more memory, but will result in faster access to the ODBC data.

The *options* parameter is not used yet.

The function appends the recordset object to the parent database's list of recordset objects, for later destruction when the database is destroyed.

recordset-delete

long (**recordset-delete long** *id*)

Deletes the recordset. All data except that stored in user-defined variables will be lost. It also unlinks the recordset object from the parent database's list of recordset objects.

recordset-execute-sql

long (**recordset-execute-sql long** *id* **string** *sql*)

Directly executes a SQL statement. The data will be presented as a normal result set. Note that the recordset must have been created as a snapshot, not dynaset. Dynasets will be implemented in the near future.

Examples of common SQL statements are given in *A selection of SQL commands* (page 353).

recordset-get-char-data

string (**recordset-get-char-data long** *id* **string-or-long** *col*)

Returns the character (string) data for the current record at the specified column. The column can be a name or an integer position (starting from zero).

recordset-get-col-name

string (**recordset-get-col-name long** *id* **long** *col*)

Gets the name of the coumn at position *col*. Returns the empty string if *col* does not exist.

recordset-get-col-type

string (**recordset-get-col-type long** *id* **string-or-long** *col*)

Gets the name of the coumn at position *col* or name *col*. Returns "SQL_TYPE_NULL" if *col* does not exist.

See *ODBC SQL data types* (page 352) for the possible return values from this function.

recordset-get-columns

long (**recordset-get-columns long** *id* **optional string** *table* = "")

Returns the columns of the table with the specified name. If no name is given, the internal class member *table* will be used. If both names are NULL nothing will happen. The data will be presented as a normal result set, organized as follows:

0 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_QUALIFIER
1 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_OWNER
2 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_NAME
3 (VARCHAR)	COLUMN_NAME
4 (SMALLINT)	DATA_TYPE
5 (VARCHAR)	TYPE_NAME
6 (INTEGER)	PRECISION
7 (INTEGER)	LENGTH
8 (SMALLINT)	SCALE
9 (SMALLINT)	RADIX
10 (SMALLINT)	NULLABLE
11 (VARCHAR)	REMARKS

recordset-get-database

long (**recordset-get-database long** *id*)

Returns the identifier of the parent database.

recordset-get-data-sources

long (**recordset-get-data-sources long** *id*)

Gets the currently-defined data sources via the ODBC manager. The data will be presented as a normal result set. See the documentation for the ODBC function SQLDataSources for how the data is organized. The name of the source is at column 0.

recordset-get-error-code

string (**recordset-get-error-code long** *id*)

Returns the error code of the last ODBC action. This will be a string containing one of:

SQL_ERROR	General error.
SQL_INVALID_HANDLE	An invalid handle was passed to an ODBC function.
SQL_NEED_DATA	ODBC expected some data.
SQL_NO_DATA_FOUND	No data was found by this ODBC call.
SQL_SUCCESS	The call was successful.
SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO	The call was successful, but further information can be obtained from the ODBC manager.

recordset-get-filter

string (**recordset-get-filter long** *id*)

Returns the current filter.

recordset-get-float-data

double (**recordset-get-float-data long** *id* **string-or-long** *col*)

Returns the floating-point data for the current record at the specified column. The column can be a name or an integer position (starting from zero).

recordset-get-foreign-keys

long (**recordset-get-foreign-keys long** *id* **optional string** *ftable* = "" **optional string** *ktable* = "")

Returns a list of foreign keys in the specified table (columns in the specified table that refer to primary keys in other tables), or a list of foreign keys in other tables that refer to the primary key in the specified table.

If *ptable* contains a table name, this function returns a result set containing the primary key of the specified table.

If *ftable* contains a table name, this functions returns a result set of containing all of the foreign keys in the specified table and the primary keys (in other tables) to which they refer.

If both *ptable* and *ftable* contain table names, this function returns the foreign keys in the table specified in *ftable* that refer to the primary key of the table specified in *ptable*. This should be one key at most.

GetForeignKeys returns results as a standard result set. If the foreign keys associated with a primary key are requested, the result set is ordered by FKTABLE_QUALIFIER, FKTABLE_OWNER, FKTABLE_NAME, and KEY_SEQ. If the primary keys associated with a foreign key are requested, the result set is ordered by PKTABLE_QUALIFIER, PKTABLE_OWNER, PKTABLE_NAME, and KEY_SEQ. The following table lists the columns in the result set.

0 (VARCHAR)	PKTABLE_QUALIFIER
1 (VARCHAR)	PKTABLE_OWNER

2 (VARCHAR)	PKTABLE_NAME
3 (VARCHAR)	PKCOLUMN_NAME
4 (VARCHAR)	FKTABLE_QUALIFIER
5 (VARCHAR)	FKTABLE_OWNER
6 (VARCHAR)	FKTABLE_NAME
7 (VARCHAR)	FKCOLUMN_NAME
8 (SMALLINT)	KEY_SEQ
9 (SMALLINT)	UPDATE_RULE
10 (SMALLINT)	DELETE_RULE
11 (VARCHAR)	FK_NAME
12 (VARCHAR)	PK_NAME

recordset-get-int-data

long (**recordset-get-int-data long** *id* **string-or-long** *col*)

Returns the integer data for the current record at the specified column. The column can be a name or an integer position (starting from zero).

recordset-get-number-cols

long (**recordset-get-number-cols long** *id*)

Returns the number of columns in the result set.

recordset-get-number-fields

long (**recordset-get-number-fields long** *id*)

Not implemented.

recordset-get-number-params

long (**recordset-get-number-params long** *id*)

Not implemented.

recordset-get-number-records

long (**recordset-get-number-records long** *id*)

Returns the number of records in the result set.

recordset-get-primary-keys

long (**recordset-get-primary-keys long** *id* **optional string** *table* = "")

Returns the column names that comprise the primary key of the table with the specified name. If no name is given the class member *tablename* will be used. If both names are NULL nothing will happen. The data will be presented as a normal result set, organized as follows:

0 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_QUALIFIER
1 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_OWNER
2 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_NAME
3 (VARCHAR)	COLUMN_NAME
4 (SMALLINT)	KEY_SEQ
5 (VARCHAR)	PK_NAME

recordset-get-result-set

long (**recordset-get-result-set long** *id*)

Copies the data presented by ODBC into the recordset. Depending on the recordset type all or only one record(s) will be copied. Usually this function will be called automatically after each successful database operation.

recordset-get-table-name

string (**recordset-get-table-name long** *id*)

Returns the name of the current table.

recordset-get-tables

long (**recordset-get-tables long** *id*)

Gets the tables of a database. The data will be presented as a normal result set, organized as follows:

0 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_QUALIFIER
1 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_OWNER
2 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_NAME
3 (VARCHAR)	TABLE_TYPE (TABLE, VIEW, SYSTEM TABLE, GLOBAL TEMPORARY, LOCAL TEMPORARY, ALIAS, SYNONYM, or database-specific type)
4 (VARCHAR)	REMARKS

recordset-goto

long (**recordset-goto long** *id* **long** *n*)

Moves the cursor to the record with the number n, where the first record has the number 0.

recordset-is-bof

long (**recordset-is-bof long** *id*)

Returns 1 if the user tried to move the cursor before the first record in the set.

recordset-is-field-dirty

long (**recordset-is-field-dirty long** *id* **string-or-long** *field*)

Returns 1 if the given field has been changed but not saved yet.

recordset-is-field-null

long (**recordset-is-field-null long** *id* **string-or-long** *field*)

Returns 1 if the given field has no data.

recordset-is-col-nullable

long (**recordset-is-col-nullable long** *id* **string-or-long** *field*)

Returns 1 if the given column may contain no data.

recordset-is-eof

long (**recordset-is-eof long** *id*)

Returns 1 if the user tried to move the cursor behind the last record in the set.

recordset-is-open

long (**recordset-is-open long** *id*)

Returns 1 if the parent database is open.

recordset-move

long (**recordset-move long** *id* **long** *rows*)

Moves the cursor a given number of rows. Negative values are allowed.

recordset-move-first

long (**recordset-move-first long** *id*)

Moves the cursor to the first record.

recordset-move-last

long (**recordset-move-last long** *id*)

Moves the cursor to the last record.

recordset-move-next

long (**recordset-move-next long** *id*)

Moves the cursor to the next record.

recordset-move-prev

long (**recordset-move-prev long** *id*)

Moves the cursor to the previous record.

recordset-query

long (**recordset-query long** *id* **string** *columns* **string** *table* **optional string** *filter*)

Start a query. An SQL string of the following type will automatically be generated and executed: "SELECT columns FROM table WHERE filter".

recordset-set-table-name

long (**recordset-set-table-name long** *id* **string** *table*)

Specify the name of the table you want to use.

14.47. Server

See also *Interprocess communication overview* (page 343)

A server object represents the server side of a DDE conversation.

To delete a server object, use object-delete.

server-create

long (**server-create string** *service-name*)

Creates a server object, and returns an integer id if successful.

service-name is a string identifying this service to potential clients. Under UNIX, it should contain a valid port number.

The application should use *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to register the window callback OnAcceptConnection or OnAcceptConnectionEx, which will be called when a client requests a connection.

OnAcceptConnection will be called with arguments:

1. server id (long)
2. the name of the topic in which the client is interested (string)

3. tentative connection id (long)

If this function returns zero, the connection is rejected and deleted, otherwise it is confirmed. See also *connection* (page 247).

OnAcceptConnectionEx will be called with arguments:

1. server id (long)
2. the name of the topic in which the client is interested (string)

This form assumes that the connection object will be created with connection-create from within the callback.

14.48. Slider

A slider is a panel item for denoting a range of values. It must be a child of a *panel* (page 297).

slider-create

long (**slider-create long** *panel-id* **string** *callback* **string** *label*
long *value* **long** *min-value* **long** *max-value*
long *width* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a horizontal slider item on the given panel. The callback may be the empty string ("") to denote no callback, or a word or string for the function name. The function will be called when the slider value is changed, with the slider item ID as argument.

If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

style is a *bit list* of the following:

wxHORIZONTAL	The item will be created as a horizontal slider.
wxVERTICAL	The item will be created as a vertical slider.

name gives the slider a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

slider-set-value

long (**slider-set-value long** *slider-id* **long** *value*)

Set the value of the slider.

slider-get-value

long (**slider-get-value long** *slider-id*)

Gets the value of the slider.

14.49. Text

A text item is used for displaying and editing a single line of text. It must be a child of a *panel* (page 297).

See also *multi-line text* (page 294).

text-create

long (**text-create long** *panel-id* **string** *callback* **string** *label*
optional string *value* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y*
optional long *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a single-line text item on the given panel. The callback may be the empty string ("") to denote no callback, or a word or string for the function name. The function will be called when return is pressed in the text item, with the text item ID as argument. The default value is optional.

If no position is given, the panel item is placed after the last item. The value -1 may be passed to denote a default, so that the position may be left unspecified and the size given.

style may be the empty string, or a *bit list* of:

wxTE_PROCESS_ENTER	The callback function will receive the event wxEVENT_TYPE_TEXT_ENTER_COMMAND. Note that this will break tab traversal for this panel item under Windows. Single-line text only.
wxTE_PASSWORD	The text will be echoed as asterisks. Single-line text only.
wxTE_READONLY	The text will not be user-editable.
wxHSCROLL	A horizontal scrollbar will be displayed. If wxHSCROLL is omitted, only a vertical scrollbar is displayed, and lines will be wrapped. This parameter is ignored under XView. Multi-line text only.

name gives the group box a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

text-set-value

long (**text-set-value long** *text-id* **string** *value*)

Set the string value of a text item.

text-get-value

string (**text-get-value long** *text-id*)

Get the string value of a text item.

14.50. Text window

To display a lot of text, use this subwindow as the child of a *frame* (page 266). It is capable of loading and saving files of ASCII text, and under Open Look and Motif, the text can be edited directly.

To allow the user to edit text under Windows as well as the other platforms, either invoke an external editor or create a *multi-line text item* (page 294) on a panel.

Under Windows, there is an extended range of functions. Some take character positions - a single integer which can identify a character position - and others take line and character numbers. If you want to use a function that takes one form, but you only have the other, you can convert between them using a function such as text-window-xy-to-position or text-window-position-to-line. Note that line and character numbers start from zero.

The following callbacks are valid for the dialog box class:

OnChar (Not XView.) The function is called with the text window identifier, key code, and key event identifier. If the event is an ASCII keypress, the code will correspond to the ASCII code; otherwise, the programmer must refer to the constants defined in `common.h`, in the wxWindows library.

To invoke default processing, call text-window-on-char.

OnSize The function is called with the text window identifier, width and height.

See also *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

text-window-clear

long (**text-window-clear long** *window-id*)

Clears the contents of a text subwindow. Returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

text-window-copy

long (**text-window-copy long** *window-id*)

Copies the selected text to the clipboard.

text-window-cut

long (**text-window-cut long** *window-id*)

Copies the selected text to the clipboard, then removes the selection.

text-window-create

long (**text-window-create long** *parent-id* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y* **optional long** *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a text subwindow. *parent-id* must be a valid frame ID.

style is a *bit list* of some of the following:

wxBORDER	Use this style to draw a thin border in Windows 3 (non-native implementation only).
wxNATIVE_IMPL	Use this style to allow editing under MS Windows, albeit with a 64K

limitation.

name gives the text window a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

text-window-discard-edits

void (**text-window-discard-edits long** *window-id*)

Discard any edits in the text window.

text-window-get-contents

string (**text-window-get-contents long** *window-id*)

Returns the window contents (to a maximum of 1000 characters).

text-window-get-insertion-point

long (**text-window-get-insertion-point long** *window-id*)

Returns the insertion point.

text-window-get-last-position

long (**text-window-get-last-position long** *window-id*)

Returns the final position in the text window.

text-window-get-line-length

long (**text-window-get-line-length long** *window-id* **long** *line-no*)

Returns the length of the text at line *line-no*.

text-window-get-line-length

long (**text-window-get-line-text long** *window-id* **long** *line-no*)

Returns the text at *line-no*.

text-window-get-number-of-lines

long (**text-window-get-number-of-lines long** *window-id*)

Returns the number of lines in the text window.

text-window-load-file

long (**text-window-load-file long** *window-id* **string** *filename*)

Load the file onto the text subwindow, returning 1 for success, 0 for failure.

text-window-modified

long (**text-window-modified long** *window-id*)

Returns 1 if the text has been modified, 0 otherwise.

text-window-on-char

long (**text-window-on-char long** *panel-id* **long** *event-id*)

The default implementation of the OnChar callback. Call this to pass intercepted characters through to the text window. Note that under Windows, there seems to be an intermittent GPF bug when using this and then closing the window.

text-window-paste

long (**text-window-paste long** *window-id*)

Pastes the text (if any) from the clipboard to the text window.

text-window-position-to-char

long (**text-window-position-to-char long** *window-id* **long** *pos*)

Returns the character position (starting from zero) for the given index position.

text-window-position-to-line

long (**text-window-position-to-line long** *window-id* **long** *pos*)

Returns the line number (starting from zero) for the given index position.

text-window-remove

long (**text-window-remove long** *window-id* **long** *start-pos* **long** *end-pos*)

Removes the text between the given span selection.

text-window-replace

long (**text-window-replace long** *window-id* **long** *start-pos* **long** *end-pos* **string** *text*)

Replaces the text between the given span selection with the given text.

text-window-show-position

long (**text-window-show-position long** *window-id* **long** *pos*)

Shows the text at the given index position.

text-window-save-file

long (**text-window-save-file long** *window-id* **string** *filename*)

Saves the text in the subwindow to the given file, returning 1 for success, 0 for failure.

text-window-set-editable

long (**text-window-set-editable long** *window-id* **long** *editable*)

Sets the window editable (*editable* is 1) or read-only (*editable* is 0).

text-window-set-insertion-point

long (**text-window-set-insertion-point long** *window-id* **long** *pos*)

Sets the insertion point to the given index position.

text-window-set-selection

long (**text-window-set-selection long** *window-id* **long** *start-pos* **long** *end-pos*)

Sets the selection to the given span of text.

text-window-write

long (**text-window-write long** *window-id* **string** *text*)

Writes the given string into the text window, at the current cursor point.

text-window-xy-to-position

long (**text-window-xy-to-position long** *window-id* **long** *char-position* **long** *line*)

Converts the character and line number (each starting from zero) to a position.

14.51. Timer

A timer object can be created to notify the application at regular intervals.

timer-create

long (**timer-create**)

Creates a timer object. Use timer-start to start the timer, and register a Notify callback function to receive notification.

timer-delete

long (**timer-delete long** *id*)

Stops and deletes the timer object.

timer-start

long (**timer-start long** *id* **long** *milliseconds*)

Starts the timer, notifying at intervals of duration *milliseconds*.

timer-stop

long (**timer-stop long** *id*)

Stops the timer.

14.52. Toolbar

See also *Overview* (page 347)

A toolbar is an array of bitmap buttons, implemented by drawing bitmaps onto a canvas, instead of using the native button implementation.

toolbar-add-separator

long (**toolbar-add-separator long** *id*)

Adds a separator between tools.

toolbar-add-tool

long (**toolbar-add-tool long** *id* **long** *index* **long** *bitmap-id1* **optional long** *bitmap-id2 = 0* **optional long** *is-toggle = 0* **optional double** *x = -1.0* **optional double** *x = 1.0* **optional long** *client-data = 0* **optional string** *short-help-string=""* **optional string** *long-help-string=""*)

Adds a tool to the toolbar. Pass at least one bitmap, the bitmap to be displayed when active and not depressed; and optionally, the bitmap to be displayed when the tool is depressed or toggled. Under Windows, only one bitmap is necessary, and under X, the second bitmap will be created automatically as the inverse of the first button if none is supplied.

You can specify whether the tool is allowed to toggle, and pass a position if you are not going to automatically layout the toolbar with *toolbar-layout*. You can associate client data with the tool.

short-help-string is only used by Windows 95 versions of wxCLIPS. The string is used to supply text for a tooltip, a small yellow window that appears as the mouse pointer hovers over the button.

long-help-string can be used for longer help strings, such as status line help.

toolbar-clear-tools

long (**toolbar-clear-tools long** *id*)

Clears all the tools from the toolbar.

toolbar-create

long (**toolbar-create long** *parent_id* **optional long** *x* **optional long** *y* **optional long** *width* **optional long** *height* **optional string** *style* **optional string** *orientation = "wxVERTICAL"* **optional long** *nrows-or-columns* **optional long** *create-buttons* **optional string** *name*)

Creates a toolbar, with a given layout orientation (whether the tools are automatically laid out in rows or columns) and the number of rows or columns. These parameters are arbitrary if the tools are to be positioned manually and *toolbar-layout* not called.

style may be a *bit list* of:

- wxTB_3DBUTTONS: gives a simple 3D look to the buttons.

create-buttons should be 1 (the default) if the toolbar should superimpose the user-supplied buttons onto a larger 3D button. If 0, the tool will be the same size as the button, and the toggle state will be represented by inverting the tool (Windows) or adding a border (X).

Returns the toolbar id if successful, zero otherwise.

name gives the toolbar a name that can be retrieved with *window-get-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

Note that absolute tool positioning (or the toolbar-layout function) does not work for buttonbars under Windows 95: instead, you can specify the number of rows for the toolbar, and use toolbar-add-separator to achieve inter-tool spacing.

toolbar-create-tools

long (**toolbar-create-tools long** *id*)

This should be called when creating Windows 95 buttonbars, after all tools have been added. It adds the tools to the toolbar. You can also call it for non-Windows 95 toolbars and buttonbars, in which case it will have no effect.

toolbar-enable-tool

long (**toolbar-enable-tool long** *id* **long** *tool-id* **long** *enable*)

Enables the tool (if *enable* is 1) or disables it (if *enable* is 0).

toolbar-get-max-height

double (**toolbar-get-max-height long** *id*)

Gets the maximum height of the toolbar when it has been automatically laid out.

toolbar-get-max-width

double (**toolbar-get-max-width long** *id*)

Gets the maximum width of the toolbar when it has been automatically laid out.

toolbar-get-tool-client-data

long (**toolbar-get-tool-client-data long** *id* **long** *tool-id*)

Returns the client data associated with the given tool.

toolbar-get-tool-enabled

long (**toolbar-get-tool-enabled long** *id* **long** *tool-id*)

Returns 1 if the tool is enabled, 0 otherwise.

toolbar-get-tool-long-help

string (**toolbar-get-tool-long-help long** *id* **long** *tool-id*)

Returns the long help associated with this tool.

toolbar-get-tool-short-help

string (**toolbar-get-tool-short-help long** *id* **long** *tool-id*)

Returns the short help associated with this tool.

toolbar-get-tool-state

long (**toolbar-get-tool-state long** *id* **long** *tool-id*)

Returns the tool state (1 for toggled on, 0 for off).

toolbar-layout

long (**toolbar-layout long** *id*)

Lays out all the tools if automatic layout is required.

Note that this function does not work for buttonbars under Windows 95: but you can still specify the number of rows for the toolbar.

toolbar-on-paint

void (**toolbar-on-paint long** *id*)

Calls the default toolbar paint callback. You may wish to call this if you override the default callback.

toolbar-set-default-size

long (**toolbar-set-default-size long** *id* **long** *width* **long** *height*)

Sets the width and height of tool buttons (Windows only). The default is 24 by 22.

toolbar-set-margins

long (**toolbar-set-margins long** *id* **long** *x* **long** *y*)

Sets the width and height of the toolbar margins and spacing, if automatic layout is being used.

toolbar-set-tool-long-help

long (**toolbar-set-tool-long-help long** *id* **long** *tool-id* **string** *help-string*)

Sets the long help associated with this tool.

toolbar-set-tool-short-help

long (**toolbar-set-tool-short-help long** *id* **long** *tool-id* **string** *help-string*)

Sets the short help associated with this tool.

toolbar-toggle-tool

long (**toolbar-toggle-tool long** *id* **long** *tool-id* **long** *toggle*)

Toggles the tool on or off.

14.53. Window

The window is an 'abstract' class which does not exist in its own right, but is used to access the functionality of classes derived from it. Therefore, please refer to this section when considering other classes.

window-add-callback

long (**window-add-callback long** *window-id* **word** *event* **word** *function*)

Sets the callback function of a given window (frame, panel, panel item etc.) for the given event, to be the given CLIPS function. See individual window descriptions for details of valid callbacks.

window-centre

long (**window-centre long** *window-id* **word** *orientation*)

orientation may be wxVERTICAL, wxHORIZONTAL or wxBOTH. Centres the window with respect to its parent (or desktop).

window-close

long (**window-close long** *window-id* **long** *force-close*)

Closes the dialog or frame without immediately deleting the object. The object will be cleaned up in 'idle' processing time. Use of this function instead of deleting the window directly is highly recommended, especially under Motif which is sensitive to frame and dialog deletion.

This function first calls the window's OnClose handler. If OnClose returns FALSE, the close will be vetoed *unless* the *force-close* argument is 1, in which case the deletion will take place anyway.

window-close should only be used for frames and dialog boxes.

window-delete

long (**window-delete long** *window-id*)

Deletes a window. See also *window-close* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

window-enable

long (**window-enable long** *window-id* **long** *enable*)

If *enable* is 1, enables the window for input. If *enable* is 0, the window is disabled (greyed out in the case of a panel item).

window-fit

long (**window-fit long** *window-id*)

Fits the panel, dialog box or frame around its children.

window-get-name

string (**window-get-name long** *window-id*)

Gets the window's name (the 'name' parameter passed to a window constructor).

window-get-next-child

long (**window-get-next-child long** *window-id* **long** *child-id*)

If *child-id* is zero, returns the id of the first child window of *window-id*.

If *child-id* is a valid child id, returns the id of the next child window.

Returns -1 if there are no more children.

Example:

```
(bind ?child-id (window-get-next-child ?win-id 0))

(while (neq ?child-id -1)
  (bind ?type (object-get-type ?child-id))
  ...
  (bind ?child-id (window-get-next-child ?win-d ?child-id))
)
```

window-get-parent

long (**window-get-parent long** *window-id*)

Gets the id of the window's parent.

window-get-x

long (**window-get-x long** *window-id*)

Get the *x* coordinate of the window.

window-get-y

long (**window-get-y long** *window-id*)

Gets the *y* coordinate of the window.

window-get-width

long (**window-get-width long** *window-id*)

Gets the width of the window.

window-get-height

long (**window-get-height long** *window-id*)

Gets the height of the window.

window-get-client-width

long (**window-get-client-width long** *window-id*)

Gets the client width (space available for child windows) of the window.

window-get-client-height

long (**window-get-client-height long** *window-id*)

Gets the client height (space available for child windows) of the window.

window-is-shown

long (**window-is-shown long** *window-id*)

Returns 1 if the window is shown, 0 otherwise.

window-make-modal

long (**window-make-modal long** *window-id* **long** *modal*)

modal may be 1 to disable all frames and dialog boxes except this one, or 0 to enable all frames and dialogs again.

Has no effect in XView.

window-popup-menu

long (**window-popup-menu long** *window-id* **long** *menu-id* **double** *x* **double** *y*)

Pops up a menu on the window, at the given position. The menu will be dismissed (but not destroyed) when the user makes a selection.

Note that there is a reliability problem with Motif popup menus; they may not pop up after the first time.

window-refresh

long (**window-refresh long** *window-id* **long** *erase-background=1* **long** *x=-1* **long** *y=-1* **long** *width=-1* **long** *height=-1*) Refreshes the give window, causing OnPaint to be called. This function should be called in preference to calling an OnPaint handler directly.

erase-background controls whether the window background is automatically cleared in the current background colour (1) or not (0). The default is 1.

The last four optional arguments define a rectangle to limit the 'damaged' area. If all arguments are -1, this is taken to mean that the whole window should be refreshed.

window-remove-callback

long (**window-remove-callback long** *window-id* **word** *event*)

Removes the callback function associated with this event.

window-set-cursor

long (**window-set-cursor long** *window-id* **long** *cursor-id*)

Sets the cursor for this window.

window-set-focus

long (**window-set-focus long** *window-id*)

Set this window to have the keyboard focus.

window-set-size

long (**window-set-size long** *window-id* **long** *x* **long** *y* **long** *width* **long** *height*)

Sets the position and size of the window.

window-set-size-hints

long (**window-set-size-hints long** *window-id* **long** *min-width=-1* **long** *min-height=-1* **long** *max-width=-1* **long** *max-height=-1* **long** *inc-width=-1* **long** *inc-height=-1*) Tells the windowing system to restrict the resizing of the frame or dialog box.

min-width, min-height determine the minimum size of the window.

max-width, max-height determine the maximum size of the window.

inc-width, inc-height determine the increments by which the window is sized (Motif only).

-1 values indicate where default values should be used instead of application-specified values.

window-set-client-size

long (**window-set-client-size long** *window-id* **long** *width* **long** *height*)

Sets the client size (available space for child windows) of the window.

window-show

long (**window-show long** *window-id* **long** *show*)

If *show* is 1, shows the window. If *show* is 0, the window is hidden. If the window is a modal dialog box, *show = 1* will start the modal loop, and *show = 0* will terminate the loop (allowing execution to proceed after the first call to *window-show*).

14.54. Miscellaneous

This section contains an assortment of useful GUI and other functions.

batch

void (**batch string** *filename*)

Executes the given file of CLIPS commands as if from a terminal. Note that full error checking on construct definitions is not performed; use load when checking is required.

begin-busy-cursor

void (**begin-busy-cursor**)

Starts a 'busy' section of code, putting up an hourglass cursor. Use *end-busy-cursor* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) at the end of the section.

These pairs of calls may be nested for programming convenience.

bell

void (**bell**)

Rings the system bell.

chdir

long (**chdir string** *directory*)

Changes to the given directory and returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

clean-windows

void (**clean-windows**)

Delete all frames and dialog boxes created through CLIPS calls.

clear-ide-window

void (**clear-ide-window**)

Clears the wxCLIPS development window.

clear-resources

long (**clear-resources**)

Clears the wxCLIPS resource table. This table is separate from the default resource table that is used by wxCLIPS and other host C++ applications.

See also *load-resource-file* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), *panel-create-from-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), *dialog-box-create-from-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

copy-file

long (**copy-file string** *f1* **string** *f2*)

Copies file *f1* to *f2*, returning 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

debug-msg

void (**debug-msg string** *text*)

Outputs *text* to the debugging stream. Under X, this is the standard error stream. Under Windows, this outputs to the debugger (if present) or any other program that can intercept debug messages, such as Microsoft's DBWIN sample application. This can be useful if you don't have a text window available, and you want the messages to persist after your program has exited, gracefully or otherwise.

dir-exists

long (**dir-exists string** *directory*)

Returns 1 if the directory exists, 0 otherwise.

end-busy-cursor

void (**end-busy-cursor**)

Ends a 'busy' section of code, resetting the cursor to the original for each window. Use *begin-busy-cursor* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) at the start of the section.

These pairs of calls may be nested for programming convenience.

execute

long (**execute string** *command* **optional long** *synchronous = 0*)

Executes the given system command, either asynchronously (the function returns control immediately) or synchronously (the function returns control when the command terminates). The default is asynchronous execution.

This function should be used in preference to the CLIPS *system* command. Under Windows, it calls WinExec. You cannot call built-in DOS commands (such erase) with this function: you may need to write a batch file instead.

fact-string-existp

bool (**fact-string-existp string** *fact*)

Allows an application to test a fact from within a function. For example:

```
CLIPS> (fact-string-existp "(Example 1)")
CLIPS> FALSE
CLIPS> (assert (Example 2))
CLIPS> <Fact-0>
CLIPS> (fact-string-existp "(Example 2)")
CLIPS> TRUE
CLIPS> (retract 0)
CLIPS> (fact-string-existp "(Example 2)")
CLIPS> FALSE
```

file-exists

long (**file-exists string** *filename*)

Returns 1 if the file exists, 0 otherwise.

file-selector

string (**file-selector optional string** *message* **optional string** *path* **optional string** *file* **optional string** *extension* **optional string** *wildcard* **optional long** *parent-id* **optional string** *flags*)

Pops up a file selector with given (optional) arguments, returning a fully qualified filename or the empty string.

flags can be the empty string or a *bit list* of the following:

wxSAVE	Display the Save button instead of the Open button (Windows only).
wxOVERWRITE_PROMPT	Prompts the user when saving if there is already a file of that name (Windows only).
wxOPEN	Display the Open button (Windows only).
wxHIDE_READONLY	Hide the "Open as read-only" checkbox (Windows only).

find-window-by-label

long (**find-window-by-label string** *label* **optional long** *parent-id*)

Finds a window with a label or title corresponding to *label*. Optionally pass a parent id from where to start searching.

find-window-by-name

long (**find-window-by-name string** *name* **optional long** *parent-id*)

Finds a window with a name corresponding to *name*. Optionally pass a parent id from where to start searching.

float-to-string

string (**float-to-string double** *n*)

Convert a floating point number to a string.

get-active-window

long (**get-active-window**)

Returns the id of the active window, or -1 if either there is no active window in this application, or the active window has not been created as a wxCLIPS window.

This function only works under MS Windows.

get-choice

string (**get-choice string** *message* **multifield** *choices* **optional long** *centre-message* **optional long** *parent-id*)

Given a message string and a multifield comprising a number of choice strings, pops up a menu for the user to select one item. Returns one of the supplied strings if the user pressed Ok, or the null string if the user pressed Cancel.

A multifield can be created with the CLIPS function mv-append, for example:

```
(bind ?choice (get-choice "Choose please"
                          (mv-append "One" "Two" "Three")))
```

If *centre-message* is 1 (the default), the message will be centred on the dialog box. If it is 0, the message will be left-justified. New lines are allowed in the message.

get-elapsed-time

long (**get-elapsed-time optional long** *reset-timer = 1*)

Returns the elapsed time in milliseconds since the last reset, using *start-timer* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) or by passing 1 to this function.

get-ide-window

long (**get-ide-window**)

Gets the id of the wxCLIPS development window (stand-alone wxCLIPS only). If the development window has not been created, zero is returned.

get-os-version

string (**get-os-version**)

Returns a string representing the operating system under which the program is currently running. It is more precise than *get-platform* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**). However, be careful about inferring from a value of wxWIN95 that this version of wxCLIPS is compiled as a Windows 95 application: it may be compiled as a generic WIN32 application.

This may be one of the following (although only a number of these platforms are currently supported).

- wxCURSES: Text-only CURSES platform
- wxXVIEW_X: Sun's XView OpenLOOK toolkit
- wxMOTIF_X: OSF Motif 1.x.x
- wxCOSE_X: OSF Common Desktop Environment
- wxNEXTSTEP: NeXTStep
- wxMACINTOSH: Apple System 7
- wxGEOS: GEOS
- wxOS2_PM: OS/2 Workplace
- wxWINDOWS: Windows or WfW
- wxPENWINDOWS: Windows for Pen Computing
- wxWINDOWS_NT: Windows NT
- wxWIN32S: Windows 32S API
- wxWIN95: Windows 95
- wxWIN386: Watcom 32-bit supervisor mode

get-platform

string (**get-platform**)

Gets a string indicating the current platform the program is running on. Currently one of "XView", "Motif" and "Windows 3.1".

For a more precise notion of current operating system, see *get-os-version* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

get-resource

string (**get-resource string** *section* **string** *entry* **optional string** *filename*)

Gets the value from the resource file (such as WIN.INI or .Xdefaults, depending on platform). If the filename is omitted, WIN.INI under Windows or .Xdefaults under X will be used.

See also *write-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

get-text-from-user

string (**get-text-from-user string** *message* **optional string** *default-value*
optional long *centre-message* **optional long** *parent-id*)

Give a message string and a default value, pops up a dialog box prompting the user to enter a string. Returns the input string if the user pressed Ok, or the null string if the user pressed Cancel.

If *centre-message* is 1 (the default), the message will be centred on the dialog box. If it is 0, the message will be left-justified. New lines are allowed in the message.

load-resource-file

long (**load-resource-file string** *filename*)

Loads the given `.wxr` resource file, return 1 if the operation was successful.

See also *clear-resources* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), *panel-create-from-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), *dialog-box-create-from-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

long-to-string

string (**long-to-string long** *value*)

Convert the integer to a string.

make-metafile-placeable

long (**make-metafile-placeable string** *filename* **long** *min-x* **long** *min-y* **long** *max-x* **long** *max-y* **optional double** *scale*)

Given a filename for an existing, valid metafile, makes it into a placeable metafile by prepending a header containing the given bounding box. The bounding box may be obtained from a device context after drawing into it, using the functions dc-get-min-x, dc-get-min-y, dc-get-max-x, and dc-get-max-y.

In addition to adding the placeable metafile header, this function adds the equivalent of the following code to the start of the metafile data:

```
 SetMapMode(dc, MM_ANISOTROPIC);
 SetWindowOrg(dc, minX, minY);
 SetWindowExt(dc, maxX - minX, maxY - minY);
```

This simulates the MM_TEXT mapping mode, which wxWindows assumes.

Placeable metafiles may be imported by many Windows applications, and can be used in RTF (Rich Text Format) files.

scale allows the specification of scale for the metafile.

This function is only available under Windows.

See also *metafile-dc* (page 291).

mci-send-string

string (**mci-send-string string** *command*)

Sends an MCI (Media Control Interface) string to Windows. Returns an error string if there was an error, or the empty string if there was no error. This allows you to play MIDI and WAV files, for example, and videos if you have an appropriate device driver.

For example:

```
 (bind ?err (mci-send-string "play bark.wav"))
 (if (neq ?err "") then (printout t "Error: " ?err crlf))
```

The following describes the basic command syntax.

```
load device_name        {file_name}

pause device_name

play device_name        [from position]
                        [to position]
                        [insert | overwrite]

resume device_name

save device_name        [file_name]

seek device_name        {to position | to start | to end}

set device_name         [audio all off
                          | audio all on
                          | audio left off
                          | audio left on
                          | audio right off
                          | audio right on
                          | video off
                          | video on]
                        [door closed | door open]
                        [time format milliseconds | time format ms]

status device_name      {current track
                          | length
                          | length track track_number
                          | mode
                          | number of tracks
                          | position
                          | position track track_number
                          | ready
                          | start position
                          | time format}

stop device name
```

message-box

word (**message-box string** *message* **optional word** *type*
optional long *centre-message* **optional long** *parent-id* **optional string** *title*)

Pops up a dialog box with a message, where the buttons on the dialog box depend on the *type* parameter. This may be OK, OK-CANCEL, YES-NO or YES-NO-CANCEL. The return value is OK, CANCEL, YES or NO.

If *centre-message* is 1 (the default), the message will be centred on the dialog box. If it is 0, the message will be left-justified. New lines are allowed in the message.

The optional *title* parameter allows the message box title to be changed from the default string 'Message'.

mkdir

long (**mkdir string** *directory*)

Creates the given directory and returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

now

string (**now**)

Returns a string representing the current time and date.

read-string

string (**read-string**)

Read a string (pops up a dialog box).

return-result

void (**return-result any** *result*)

Used by internal C++ functions to get the return value of an arbitrary CLIPS expression.

rmdir

long (**rmdir string** *directory*)

Removes the given directory and returns 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

show-ide-window

void (**show-ide-window**)

Shows the wxCLIPS development window if it has not already been created (stand-alone wxCLIPS only). This can be useful if starting a CLIPS program from the command line, and you want the development window to be shown before app-on-init has finished. Only likely to work under Windows.

set-work-proc

void (**set-work-proc string** *function*)

Sets the work function, a function with no parameter and no return result, which will be called when the application is otherwise idle. If this is the empty string, the work procedure is cancelled.

(Stand-alone version of wxCLIPS only).

Note: this has been found not to work properly on the Windows version, and is not implemented for XView. So probably this is useful only under Motif.

sleep

long (**sleep long** *no-secs*)

Makes the process dormant for the given number of seconds. This might be used in a loop involving interprocess communication, for example, to allow time for programs to be loaded. Message processing will take place whilst the process is asleep, so beware of the user interacting with the system during this period.

start-timer

void (**start-timer**)

Starts the wxCLIPS stopwatch. You can get elapsed time in milliseconds with *get-elapsed-time* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

string-sort

multifield (**string-sort multifield** *string-list*)

Sorts the given multifield list in ascending alphabetical order. A list may be created using the mv-append CLIPS function.

string-to-float

double (**string-to-float string** *value*)

Convert the string to a floating point number.

string-to-long

long (**string-to-long string** *value*)

Convert the string to a long integer.

string-to-symbol

word (**string-to-symbol string** *value*)

Convert the string to a symbol.

symbol-to-string

string (**symbol-to-string word** *value*)

Convert the string to a symbol.

write-resource

long (**write-resource string** *section* **string** *entry* **string** *value* **optional string** *filename*)

Writes the value into the resource file (such as WIN.INI or .Xdefaults, depending on platform). If the filename is omitted, WIN.INI under Windows or .Xdefaults under X will be used.

See also *get-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

wxclips-object-exists

long (**wxclips-object-exists long** *id*)

Returns 1 if the given wxCLIPS object exists, 0 otherwise.

yield

long (**yield**)

Yields to the windowing system message loop, if appropriate. Normally only of use under Windows, during periods of intensive processing, particularly following window creation or modification. It has no effect under XView or Motif.

15. wxCLIPS classes by category

A classification of wxCLIPS classes by category.

15.1. Managed windows

There are several types of window that are directly controlled by the window manager (such as MS Windows, or the Motif Window Manager). Frames may contain *subwindows* (page 334), and dialog boxes have their own built-in subwindow similar to a panel.

wxCLIPS function groups

- *Frame* (page 266)
- *Dialog box* (page 264)

wxCOOL classes

- *wxFrame* (page 191)
- *wxDialogBox* (page 187)

15.2. Subwindows

Subwindows should be created as children of frames. The panel subwindow may contain panel items (controls or widgets).

wxCLIPS function groups

- *Canvas* (page 239)
- *Grid* (page 272)
- *Panel* (page 297)
- *Text window* (page 310)
- *Toolbar* (page 315)

wxCOOL classes

- *wxCanvas* (page 164)
- *wxPanel* (page 209)
- *wxTextWindow* (page 225)
- *wxToolBar* (page 227)

See also *Window* (page 319) and *wxWindow* (page 231).

15.3. Panel items

These are widgets (in Motif terminology) or controls (in MS Windows terminology) that can be placed on panels and dialog boxes, with the exception of Menu and MenuBar.

wxCLIPS function groups

- *Button* (page 238)
- *CheckBox* (page 243)
- *Choice* (page 243)
- *Gauge* (page 271)
- *GroupBox* (page 280)

- *Item* (page 299)
- *ListBox* (page 284)
- *MultiText* (page 294)
- *Menu* (page 287)
- *MenuBar* (page 289)
- *Message* (page 290)
- *RadioBox* (page 300)
- *Slider* (page 309)
- *Text* (page 309)

wxCOOL classes

- *wxButton* (page 163)
- *wxCheckBox* (page 166)
- *wxChoice* (page 166)
- *wxGauge* (page 195)
- *wxGroupBox* (page 196)
- *wxItem* (page 211)
- *wxListBox* (page 198)
- *wxMultiText* (page 208)
- *wxMenu* (page 201)
- *wxMenuBar* (page 203)
- *wxMessage* (page 204)
- *wxRadioBox* (page 214)
- *wxSlider* (page 223)
- *wxText* (page 224)

See also *Window* (page 319) and *wxWindow* (page 231).

15.4. Convenience dialogs

Popup-related special-purpose dialogs, and related functions.

- *file-selector* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *get-choice* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *get-text-from-user* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *message-box* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *begin-busy-cursor* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *end-busy-cursor* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

15.5. Device contexts

See also *Overview* (page 346)

Device contexts are surfaces that may be drawn on, and provide an abstraction that allows parameterisation of your drawing code by passing different device contexts.

wxCLIPS function groups

- *wxDC* (page 258)
- *MemoryDC* (page 287)
- *MetaFileDC* (page 291)
- *PostScriptDC* (page 300)

- *PrinterDC* (page 300)
- *Metafile* (page 290)

wxCOOL classes

- *DC* (page 182)
- *wxMemoryDC* (page 201)
- *wxMetaFileDC* (page 205)
- *wxPostScriptDC* (page 212)
- *wxPrinterDC* (page 213)
- *wxMetafile* (page 204)

See also *make-metafile-placeable* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

15.6. Graphics device interface

These classes are related to the Graphics Device Interface, in MS Windows terminology.

wxCLIPS function groups

- *Bitmap* (page 236)
- *Brush* (page 238)
- *Cursor* (page 249)
- *Font* (page 266)
- *Icon* (page 282)
- *Pen* (page 299)
- *Colour* (page 246)

wxCOOL classes

- *wxBitmap* (page 161)
- *wxBrush* (page 162)
- *wxCursor* (page 172)
- *wxFont* (page 190)
- *wxIcon* (page 196)
- *wxPen* (page 212)

15.7. Events

Some member functions that an application overrides are passed event objects containing information about the event.

wxCLIPS function groups

- *CommandEvent* (page 246)
- *Event* (page 266)
- *KeyEvent* (page 283)
- *MouseEvent* (page 292)

wxCOOL classes

- *wxCommandEvent* (page 168)
- *wxEvent* (page 189)
- *wxKeyEvent* (page 197)

- *wxMouseEvent* (page 206)

15.8. Interprocess communication

See also *Overview* (page 343)

wxCLIPS provides a simple interprocess communications facilities based on DDE.

wxCLIPS function groups

- *Client* (page 245)
- *Connection* (page 247)
- *Help* (page 269)
- *Server* (page 308)

wxCOOL classes

- *wxClient* (page 168)
- *wxConnection* (page 169)
- *wxHelpInstance* (page 194)
- *wxServer* (page 222)

15.9. Database classes

See also *Database classes overview* (page 349)

wxCLIPS provides a set of classes for accessing Microsoft's ODBC (Open Database Connectivity) product.

wxCLIPS function groups

- *Database* (page 250)
- *RecordSet* (page 301)

wxCOOL classes

- *wxDatabase* (page 174)
- *wxRecordSet* (page 215)

15.10. File functions

- *chdir* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *dir-exists* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *file-exists* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *get-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *write-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

15.11. Time-related functions

Functions

- *Date class* (page 252)
- *Timer class* (page 315)
- *get-elapsed-time* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

- *start-timer* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *now* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

wxCLIPS function groups

- *Date class* (page 252)
- *Timer class* (page 315)

wxCOOL classes

- *wxDate* (page 176)
- *wxTimer* (page 227)

15.12. Noisy functions

- *bell* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *mci-send-string* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

15.13. Operating system functions

These functions are related to operating system functionality.

- *execute* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *get-platform* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *get-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *write-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *yield* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *sleep* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

15.14. wxCLIPS environment functions

These functions are related to the wxCLIPS development environment.

- *app-on-init* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *batch* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *clean-windows* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *debug-msg* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *get-ide-window* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *get-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *show-ide-window* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

15.15. Data functions

These functions are related to general data manipulation.

- *float-to-string* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *long-to-string* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *read-string* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *string-sort* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *string-to-float* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *string-to-long* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *string-to-symbol* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)
- *symbol-to-string* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)

16. Topic overviews

16.1. Window styles

Window styles are used to specify alternative behaviour and appearances for windows, when they are created. The symbols are defined in such as way that they can be combined in a 'bit list' using the *bitwise-or* operator, as found in C and C++. In CLIPS, you enclose this bit list in a string. For example:

```
  "wxCAPTION | wxMINIMIZE_BOX | wxMINIMIZE_BOX | wxTHICK_FRAME"
```

16.1.1. wxFrame styles

The following styles apply to wxFrame windows.

wxICONIZE	Display the frame iconized (minimized) (Windows only).
wxCAPTION	Puts a caption on the frame (Windows and XView only).
wxDEFAULT_FRAME	Defined as a combination of wxMINIMIZE_BOX, wxMAXIMIZE_BOX, wxTHICK_FRAME, wxSYSTEM_MENU, and wxCAPTION.
wxMDI_CHILD	Specifies a Windows MDI (multiple document interface) child frame.
wxMDI_PARENT	Specifies a Windows MDI (multiple document interface) parent frame.
wxMINIMIZE	Identical to **wxICONIZE**.
wxMINIMIZE_BOX	Displays a minimize box on the frame (Windows and Motif only).
wxMAXIMIZE	Displays the frame maximized (Windows only).
wxMAXIMIZE_BOX	Displays a maximize box on the frame (Windows and Motif only).
wxSDI	Specifies a normal SDI (single document interface) frame.
wxSTAY_ON_TOP	Stay on top of other windows (Windows only).
wxSYSTEM_MENU	Displays a system menu (Windows and Motif only).
wxTHICK_FRAME	Displays a thick frame around the window (Windows and Motif only).
wxRESIZE_BORDER	Displays a resizeable border around the window (Motif only).
wxTINY_CAPTION_HORIZ	Under Windows 3.1, displays a small horizontal caption if USE_ITSY_BITSY is set to 1 in wx_setup.h and the Microsoft ItsyBitsy library has been compiled. Use instead of wxCAPTION.
wxTINY_CAPTION_VERT	Under Windows 3.1, displays a small vertical caption if USE_ITSY_BITSY is set to 1 in wx_setup.h and the Microsoft ItsyBitsy library has been compiled. Use instead of wxCAPTION.

16.1.2. wxDialogBox styles

The following styles apply to wxDialogBox windows.

wxCAPTION	Puts a caption on the dialog box (Motif only).
wxDEFAULT_DIALOG_STYLE	Equivalent to a combination of wxCAPTION, wxSYSTEM_MENU and wxTHICK_FRAME
wxRESIZE_BORDER	Display a resizeable frame around the window (Motif only).
wxSYSTEM_MENU	Display a system menu (Motif only).
wxTHICK_FRAME	Display a thick frame around the window (Motif only).
wxUSER_COLOURS	Under Windows, overrides standard control processing to allow setting of the dialog box background colour.
wxVSCROLL	Give the dialog box a vertical scrollbar (XView only).

16.1.3. wxItem styles

The following styles apply to all *wxItem* (page 211) derived windows.

wxHORIZONTAL_LABEL	The item will be created with a horizontal label.
wxVERTICAL_LABEL	The item will be created with a vertical label.
wxFIXED_LENGTH	Allows the values of a column of items to be left-aligned. Create an item with this style, and pad out your labels with spaces to the same length. The item labels will initially created with a string of identical characters, positioning all the values at the same x-position. Then the real label is restored.

16.1.4. wxButton styles

There are no styles specific to *wxButton* (page 163).

16.1.5. wxGauge styles

The following styles apply to *wxGauge* (page 195) items.

wxGA_HORIZONTAL	The item will be created as a horizontal gauge.
wxGA_VERTICAL	The item will be created as a vertical gauge.
wxGA_PROGRESSBAR	Under Windows 95, the item will be created as a horizontal progress bar.

16.1.6. wxGroupBox styles

There are no styles specific to *wxGroupBox* (page 196).

16.1.7. wxListBox styles

The following styles apply to *wxListBox* (page 198) items.

wxNEEDED_SB	Create scrollbars if needed.
wxLB_NEEDED_SB	Same as wxNEEDED_SB.
wxALWAYS_SB	Create scrollbars immediately.
wxLB_ALWAYS_SB	Same as wxALWAYS_LB.
wxLB_SINGLE	Single-selection list.
wxLB_MULTIPLE	Multiple-selection list.
wxLB_EXTENDED	Extended-selection list (Motif only).
wxHSCROLL	Create horizontal scrollbar if contents are too wide (Windows only).

16.1.8. wxMessage styles

There are no styles specific to *wxMessage* (page 204).

16.1.9. wxRadioBox

The following styles apply to *wxRadioBox* (page 214) items.

wxVERTICAL	Lays the radiobox out in columns.
wxHORIZONTAL	Lays the radiobox out in rows.

16.1.10. wxSlider styles

The following styles apply to *wxSlider* (page 223) items.

wxHORIZONTAL	The item will be created as a horizontal slider.
wxVERTICAL	The item will be created as a vertical slider.

16.1.11. wxText/wxMultiText styles

The following styles apply to *wxText* (page 224) and *wxMultiText* (page 208) items.

wxTE_PROCESS_ENTER	The callback function will receive the event wxEVENT_TYPE_TEXT_ENTER_COMMAND. Note that this will break tab traversal for this panel item under Windows. Single-line text only.
wxTE_PASSWORD	The text will be echoed as asterisks. Single-line text only.
wxTE_READONLY	The text will not be user-editable.
wxHSCROLL	A horizontal scrollbar will be displayed. If wxHSCROLL is omitted, only a vertical scrollbar is displayed, and lines will be wrapped. This parameter is ignored under XView. Multi-line text only.

16.1.12. wxTextWindow styles

The following styles apply to *wxTextWindow* (page 225) objects.

wxBORDER	Use this style to draw a thin border in Windows 3 (non-native implementation only).
wxNATIVE_IMPL	Use this style to allow editing under Windows 3.1, albeit with a 64K limitation.
wxREADONLY	Use this style to disable editing.
wxHSCROLL	Use this style to enable a horizontal scrollbar, or leave it out to allow line wrapping. Windows and Motif only.

16.1.13. wxPanel styles

The following styles apply to *wxPanel* (page 209) windows.

wxBORDER	Draws a thin border around the panel.
wxUSER_COLOURS	Under Windows, overrides standard control processing to allow setting of the panel background colour.
wxVSCROLL	Gives the dialog box a vertical scrollbar (XView only).

16.1.14. wxCanvas styles

The following styles apply to *wxCanvas* (page 164) windows.

wxBORDER	Gives the canvas a thin border (Windows 3 and Motif only).
wxRETAINED	Gives the canvas a wxWindows-implemented backing store, making repainting much faster but at a potentially costly memory premium (XView and Motif only).

16.1.15. wxToolBar styles

The following styles apply to *wxToolBar* (page 227) objects.

wxTB_3DBUTTONS	Gives a 3D look to the buttons, but not to the same extent as wxButtonBar.

16.2. Interprocess communication overview

wxCLIP function groups: *Server* (page 308), *Connection* (page 247), *Client* (page 245).

wxCOOL classes: *wxServer* (page 222), *wxConnection* (page 169), *wxClient* (page 168).

The following describes how wxCLIPS implements DDE. The following three classes are central.

1. Client. This represents the client application, and is used only within a client program.
2. Server. This represents the server application, and is used only within a server program.
3. Connection. This represents the connection from the current client or server to the other application (server or client), and can be used in both server and client programs. Most DDE transactions operate on this object.

Messages between applications are usually identified by three variables: connection object, topic name and item name. A data string is a fourth element of some messages. To create a connection (a conversation in Windows parlance), the client application sends the message client-make-connection to the client object, with a string service name to identify the server and a topic name to identify the topic for the duration of the connection. Under UNIX, the service name must contain an integer port identifier.

The server then responds and either vetos the connection or allows it. If allowed, a connection object is created which persists until the connection is closed. The connection object is then used for subsequent messages between client and server.

To create a working server, the programmer must:

1. Create a server object, giving it a service name.
2. Register the callback OnAcceptConnection for accepting or rejecting a connection, on the basis of the topic argument.
3. Create a Connection object.
4. Provide callbacks for various messages that are sent to the server side of a Connection.

To create a working client, the programmer must:

1. Create a client object.
2. Create a connection object using *client-make-connection* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).
3. Provide callbacks for various messages that are sent to the client side of a Connection.
4. Use the Connection functions to send messages to the server.

16.2.1. Data transfer

These are the ways that data can be transferred from one application to another.

- **Execute:** the client calls the server with a data string representing a command to be executed. This succeeds or fails, depending on the server's willingness to answer. If the client wants to find the result of the Execute command other than success or failure, it has to explicitly call Request.
- **Request:** the client asks the server for a particular data string associated with a given item string. If the server is unwilling to reply, the return value is NULL. Otherwise, the return value is a string (actually a pointer to the connection buffer, so it should not be deallocated by the application).
- **Poke:** The client sends a data string associated with an item string directly to the server. This succeeds or fails.
- **Advise:** The client asks to be advised of any change in data associated with a particular item. If the server agrees, the server will send an OnAdvise message to the client along with the item and data.

The default data type is wxCF_TEXT (ASCII text), and the default data size is the length of the null-terminated string. Windows-specific data types could also be used on the PC.

16.2.2. Connection overview

See also *Interprocess communication overview* (page 343)

A connection object has no creation function, since it is implicitly created when a connection is requested (one object at each side of the connection).

A connection object id is used for initiating DDE commands and requests using functions such as connection-execute, and it also has event handlers associated with it to respond to commands from the other side of the connection.

The callbacks you can define for a connection (using *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)) are as follows.

OnAdvise Called when an OnAdvise message is received by the client in response to a server-side connection-advise call. The function should take arguments: connection id, OnAdvise, topic string, item name string, data string. The function should return 1 if successful, 0 otherwise. The data string is what the server is passing to the client.

OnExecute Called when an OnExecute message is received by the server in response to a client-side connection-execute call. The function should take arguments: connection id, OnExecute, topic string, dummy item, data string. The function should return 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

OnPoke Called when an OnPoke message is received by the server in response to a client-side connection-poke call. The function should take arguments: connection id, OnPoke, topic string, item name, data string. The function should return 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

OnRequest Called when an OnRequest message is received by the server in response to a client-side connection-request call. The function should take arguments: connection id, OnRequest, topic string, item name, data string. The function should return the data being requested, or the empty string if none. otherwise.

OnStartAdvise Called when an OnStartAdvise message is received by the server in response to a client-side connection-start-advise call. The function should take arguments: connection id, OnStartAdvise, topic string, item name, dummy data. The function should return 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

OnStopAdvise Called when an OnStopAdvise message is received by the server in response to a client-side connection-start-advise call. The function should take arguments: connection id, OnStopAdvise, topic string, item name, dummy data. The function should return 1 if successful, 0 otherwise.

16.2.3. Examples

See the sample programs ddeserv.clp, ddeclien.clp in the examples directory. Run the server, then the client (you'll have to copy wxclips.exe to wxclips2.exe to run two copies simulataneously).

The sample ddetest.clp shows a simple example of accessing the Program Manager using DDE (Windows only).

```
;;; Demo of DDE functions: chatting to PROGMAN
;;;

(defglobal ?*progman-server* = 0)
(defglobal ?*progman-server-name* = "PROGMAN")
(defglobal ?*progman-host-name* = "none")
(defglobal ?*progman-topic-name* = "PROGMAN")
(defglobal ?*progman-client* = 0)
(defglobal ?*progman-connection* = 0)

;;; Convert a multifield list of strings to one string
(deffunction many-strings-to-one ($?strings)
  (bind ?counter 1)
  (bind ?string "")
  (while (<= ?counter (length $?strings)) do
    (bind ?string (str-cat ?string (nth ?counter $?strings)))
    (bind ?counter (+ ?counter 1))
  )
  (return ?string)
)

(deffunction progman-demo ()
 ;; Get a group name from the user
 (bind ?new-group-name (get-text-from-user "New PROGMAN group name"))
 (if (neq ?new-group-name "") then
  ;; Form create group command
  (bind ?command (many-strings-to-one (mv-append "[CreateGroup(" ?new-
group-name ")]")))

  ;; Construct a client object
  (bind ?*progman-client* (client-create))
  ;; Construct a connection object
  (bind ?*progman-connection* (client-make-connection
              ?*progman-client* ?*progman-host-name*
              ?*progman-server-name* ?*progman-topic-name*))

  ;; Execute a command to create a group
  (bind ?exe (connection-execute ?*progman-connection* ?command))

  ;; Request a list of groups
  (bind ?req (connection-request ?*progman-connection* "PROGMAN"))
  (format t "%nProgram Manager Groups:%n")
  (format t "%s%n%n" ?req)

  ;; Disconnect
  (connection-disconnect ?*progman-connection*)
 )
)

;;; Automatically called when running application from command line
;;; e.g. wxclips -start -clips ddetest.clp
;;; Also runnable from the Application: Run application.
(deffunction app-on-init ()
  (progman-demo)
)
```

16.3. Device context overview

wxCLIPS function groups: *DC* (page 258), *PostScriptDC* (page 300), *MetaFileDC* (page 291), *MemoryDC* (page 287), *PrinterDC* (page 300)

wxCOOL classes: *wxDC* (page 182), *wxPostScriptDC* (page 212), *wxMetaFileDC* (page 205), *wxMemoryDC* (page 201), *wxPrinterDC* (page 213)

A device context is an abstraction of all the devices that can be drawn onto, such as PostScript file, canvas, printer, metafile, and bitmap. Instead of drawing directly on one of these devices, the application programmer can write a function that writes to a device context, and then pass any device context to that function. The most frequently used device context is probably the canvas device context. This cannot be created by an application but can be retrieved from a *canvas* (page 239) by calling *canvas-get-dc* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

At present, wxCLIPS supports the canvas, memory, PostScript, Windows printer and Windows metafile device contexts.

When writing code to draw into a device context, use a device context variable as a parameter whenever possible, to allow the most general use of your drawing code. You can then pass a device context object of any derived type.

16.4. Dialog box overview

Function group/class: *DialogBox* (page 264)/*wxDialogBox* (page 187)

A dialog box is similar to a panel, in that it is a window which can be used for placing panel items, with the following exceptions:

1. A surrounding frame is implicitly created.
2. Extra functionality is automatically given to the dialog box, such as tabbing between

items (currently Windows only).

3. If the dialog box is *modal*, the calling program is blocked until the dialog box is dismissed.

Under XView, some panel items may display incorrectly in a modal dialog, and two modal dialogs may not be open simultaneously. This can be corrected using a wxWindows patch.

Under implementations that permit it, Dialog box inherits from Canvas via Panel, and has a Panel DC that the application can draw on.

The panel device context associated with Dialog box behaves slightly differently than for a panel or canvas: drawing to it *requires* enclosing code in dc-begin-drawing, dc-end-drawing calls. This is because under Windows, dialog box device contexts are not 'retained' and settings would be lost if the device context were retrieved and released for each drawing operations.

See *Miscellaneous* (page 323) for convenience dialog functions which avoid the need to create a dialog box and individual items.

The following callbacks are valid for the dialog box class:

OnCommand Called with a panel identifier, an item identifier and a command event identifier when a command event is received by a panel item that does not have an associated callback. If you have created a panel or dialog box from a resource, you will need to intercept OnCommand.

OnClose The function is called with the window identifier. If the callback returns 1 and the function was called by the window manager, the window is automatically deleted. A return value of 0 forbids automatic deletion.

OnEvent Called with a dialog box identifier and a *mouse event* (page 292) identifier. This can only be guaranteed only when the dialog box is in user edit mode (to be implemented).

OnPaint Called with a dialog box identifier when the dialog box receives a repaint event from the window manager.

OnSize The function is called with the dialog box identifier, width and height.

See also *Panel* (page 297) and *Window* (page 319) for inherited member functions.

16.5. Toolbar overview

Function group/class: *Toolbar* (page 315)/*wxToolBar* (page 227)

A toolbar is an array of bitmap buttons, implemented by drawing bitmaps onto a canvas, instead of using the native button implementation. Since the toolbar inherits from canvas, you can use all canvas functions on a toolbar object.

Each tool can be specified as a normal button, on/off toggle, and disabled or enabled. Tool layout is automatic or manual. Left click and right click events may be intercepted, using OnLeftClick and OnRightClick callbacks. The OnMouseEnter callback is used to update the status line (for example) with help text as the mouse moves over the tools. See *window-add-callback* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) for details on these callbacks.

Normal subwindow geometry considerations are applicable (i.e., in a frame with more than one subwindow, you must resize the subwindows when you receive an OnSize event from the frame). The exception is for Multiple Document Interface (MDI) frames under Windows, where you must call *frame-set-tool-bar* to associate the toolbar with the MDI client window, and after initializing the toolbar height, further resizing is unnecessary.

Toolbars are often displayed as a horizontal strip under the menubar, or in a floating frame. If you wish to draw a border for the toolbar, you must intercept the toolbar's OnPaint handler. In this overriden callback, you must first call the toolbar's *toolbar-on-paint* function to draw all the tools, and then draw the border onto the toolbar canvas.

Note that under Windows, you must supply bitmaps that are 16 pixels wide and 15 pixels high: they will be placed on a tool button that is 24 by 22 pixels. If you wish to supply bitmaps of a different size, you must call *toolbar-set-default-size* to set the overall tool button size (as opposed to the bitmap size), *or* use the toolbar in non-button-creation mode by supplying an extra argument to *toolbar-create* to disable this functionality.

Note also that in some circumstances, especially for the WIN32 version of wxCLIPS, there are problems with the buttonbar (the symptoms are bitmaps scrambled randomly). If this happens, revert to the normal toolbar by passing 0 in the create-buttons argument to toolbar-create, or download a Windows 95 version of wxCLIPS.

Under X, tool buttons are the same size as the supplied button and there is no need to call *toolbar-set-default-size*.

Tip: in circumstances where you might think of using drag and drop, which is not currently implemented in wxWindows or wxCLIPS, you can use a toolbar to select 'modes' of operation which change the cursor in a subwindow. Intercept left-click in the subwindow to place an object or perform some operation.

Canvas callbacks apply, plus:

OnLeftClick The function is called with the toolbar identifier, tool index, and an integer which is 1 if the tool is being toggled on, or zero otherwise. If this is a toggle tool, return 1 to allow the toggle to take place, or 0 otherwise.

OnRightClick The function is called with the toolbar identifier, tool index, and x and y floating point parameters indicating the position of the click. No value need be returned.

OnMouseEnter The function is called with the tool index, whenever the mouse goes into a tool, or out of all tools. In the latter case, the tool index is -1. No value need be returned.

16.5.1. Differences in toolbar types

Different toolbar code kicks in according to the platform, and the arguments given to tool-bar-create.

1. If *create-buttons* is 0, then the bog-standard wxToolBar class from wxWindows is used: no 3D effect. This works across all supported wxCLIPS platforms. Layout can either be automated, or tools must be placed at absolute coordinates.
2. If *create-buttons* is 1 and the platform is Windows 3.1 or generic WIN32 (not Windows 95), then the buttons will be 3D effect using the wxButtonBar class. On WIN32 toggle tools will not work. On UNIX, the standard wxToolBar code will be used instead of wxButtonBar. Again, layout is automatic or absolute.
3. If *create-buttons* is 1 and the Windows 95 version of wxCLIPS is being used (not just the WIN32 version running on Windows 95), then the toolbar common control is used, supporting tooltips. However, layout is different: you must specify wxVERTICAL for layout orientation, plus the number of rows (usually 1), and you need to use toolbar-add-separator to get spaces between tools. You cannot place tools at absolute coordinates or use the toolbar-layout function. You must also call toolbar-create-tools after adding tools. Device context painting is restricted and no events may be intercepted for the toolbar except OnLeftClick and OnMouseEnter.

Note: under Windows 95, a wxButtonBar cannot be moved to any position other than the top-left of the frame.

16.6. Database classes overview

wxCLIPS function groups: *Database* (page 250), *Recordset* (page 301)

wxCOOL classes: *wxDatabase* (page 174), *wxRecordSet* (page 215)

IMPORTANT NOTE: The ODBC classes are a preliminary release and incomplete. Please take this into account when using them. Feedback and bug fixes are appreciated, as always. The classes are being developed by Olaf Klein (oklein@smallo.ruhr.de) and Patrick Halke (patrick@zaphod.ruhr.de).

wxCLIPS provides a set of classes for accessing a subset of Microsoft's ODBC (Open Database Connectivity) product. Currently, this wrapper is available under MS Windows only, although ODBC may appear on other platforms, and a generic or product-specific SQL emulator for the ODBC classes may be provided in wxWindows at a later date.

ODBC presents a unified API (Application Programmer's Interface) to a wide variety of databases, by interfacing indirectly to each database or file via an ODBC driver. The language for most of the database operations is SQL, so you need to learn a small amount of SQL as well as the wxCLIPS ODBC wrapper API. Even though the databases may not be SQL-based, the ODBC drivers translate SQL into appropriate operations for the database or file: even text files have rudimentry ODBC support, along with dBASE, Access, Excel and other file formats.

The run-time files for ODBC are bundled with many existing database packages, including MS Office.

The minimum you need to distribute with your application is odbc.dll, which must go in the Windows system directory. For the application to function correctly, ODBC drivers must be installed on the user's machine. If you do not use the database classes, odbc.dll will be loaded but not called (so ODBC does not need to be setup fully if no ODBC calls will be made).

A sample is distributed with wxCLIPS in `examples/odbc`.

16.6.1. Procedures for writing an ODBC application

You first need to create a Database object. If you want to get information from the ODBC manager instead of from a particular database (for example using *recordset-get-data-sources* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**)), then you do not need to call *database-open* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**). If you do wish to connect to a datasource, then call database-open. You can reuse your Database object, calling database-close and database-open multiple times.

Then, create a Recordset object for retrieving or sending information. For ODBC manager information retrieval, you can create it as a dynaset (retrieve the information as needed) or a snapshot (get all the data at once). If you are going to call *recordset-execute-sql* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), you need to create it as a snapshot. Dynaset mode is not yet implemented for user data.

Having called a function such as recordset-execute-sql or recordset-get-data-sources, you may have a number of records associated with the recordset, if appropriate to the operation. You can now retrieve information such as the number of records retrieved and the actual data itself. Use functions such as *recordset-get-int-data* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) or *recordset-get-*

char-data (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) to get the data, passing a column index or name. The data returned will be for the current record. To move around the records, use *recordset-move-next* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**), *recordset-move-prev* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) and associated functions.

You can use the same recordset for multiple operations, or delete the recordset and create a new one.

Note that when you delete a Database, any associated recordsets also get deleted, so beware of holding onto invalid pointers.

16.6.2. Examples

Here's an example of a function that updates a value in a database.

```
;;; Function for updating a field in a record in the incident.dbf demo
;;; file.
;;; E.g. (demo-update-integer "BD34" "X" 999)
;;; The key is the ASSET column, BD34 in the example. Record(s)
matching
;;; this key will be changed.
;;; "X" is the name of the column to be updated.
;;; 999 is a value to replace the current value.
;;;
;;; You must have previously registered the file incident.dbf
;;; with ODBC (e.g. from the control panel), with the source
;;; name "wxCLIPS demo". You can check if the file has changed
;;; by using Microsoft Query.

(deffunction demo-update-integer (?asset ?col ?value)
  (bind ?database (database-create))

  ;; Open data source
  (if (eq 0 (database-open ?database "wxCLIPS demo")) then
   (bind ?msg (database-get-error-message ?database))
   (printout t ?msg crlf)
   (return 0)
  )

  ;; Create a recordset
  (bind ?recordset (recordset-create ?database "wxOPEN_TYPE_SNAPSHOT"))

  ;; Construct an SQL statement
  (bind ?sql (str-cat "UPDATE Incident SET " ?col " = " ?value " WHERE
ASSET = '" ?asset "'"))
  (printout t ?sql crlf)

  ;; Execute the SQL.
  (if (eq 0 (recordset-execute-sql ?recordset ?sql)) then

   (bind ?msg (database-get-error-message ?database))
   (printout t ?msg crlf)
   (return 0)
  )
  (recordset-delete ?recordset)
  (database-close ?database)
  (database-delete ?database)
  (return 1)
)
```

The next example gets a value from a particular field of a record.

```
;;; Function for returning the value of an integer field.
;;; E.g. (demo-get-integer "BD34" "X")
;;; The key is the ASSET column, BD34 in the example. The first record
matching
;;; this key will be returned.
;;; "X" is the name of the column whose value is to be returned.

(deffunction demo-get-integer (?asset ?col)
  (bind ?database (database-create))

  ;; Open data source
  (if (eq 0 (database-open ?database "wxCLIPS demo")) then
   (bind ?msg (database-get-error-message ?database))
   (printout t ?msg crlf)
   (return 0)
  )

  ;; Create a recordset
  (bind ?recordset (recordset-create ?database "wxOPEN_TYPE_SNAPSHOT"))

  ;; Construct an SQL statement
  (bind ?sql (str-cat "SELECT * FROM Incident WHERE ASSET = '" ?asset
"'"))
  (printout t ?sql crlf)

  ;; Execute the SQL.
  (if (eq 0 (recordset-execute-sql ?recordset ?sql)) then

   (bind ?msg (database-get-error-message ?database))
   (printout t ?msg crlf)
   (return 0)
  )

  ;; Get the relevant field of the first record
  (bind ?data (recordset-get-int-data ?recordset ?col))

  (recordset-delete ?recordset)
  (database-close ?database)
  (database-delete ?database)
  (return ?data)
)
```

You can find out all the source names available to you with the following code.

```
  (bind ?*database* (database-create))
  (bind ?*recordset* (recordset-create ?*database*
"wxOPEN_TYPE_SNAPSHOT"))

  ;;; Get the list of currently-defined ODBC sources
  (if (eq 0 (recordset-get-data-sources ?*recordset*)) then

   (show-database-error) else

   ;;; Loop through all the source names (one per record)
   (bind ?cont 1)
   (while (eq ?cont 1)
    ;;; The source name is at the first column (0) in the record
    (bind ?data (recordset-get-char-data ?*recordset* 0))
    (list-box-append ?*sources-listbox* ?data)
    (bind ?cont (recordset-move-next ?*recordset*))
   )
  )
```

16.6.3. Database overview

See also *Database classes overview* (page 349)

Function group/class: *Database* (page 250)/*wxDatabase* (page 174)

Every database object represents an ODBC connection. To do anything useful with a database object you need to create a Recordset object. All you can do with Database is opening/closing connections and getting some info about it (users, passwords, and so on).

16.6.4. Recordset overview

See also *Database classes overview* (page 349)

Function group/class: *Recordset* (page 301)/*wxRecordSet* (page 215)

Each Recordset represents a database query. You can make multiple queries at a time by using multiple Recordsets with a Database or you can make your queries in sequential order using the same Recordset.

If Recordset is of the type wxOPEN_TYPE_DYNASET, there will be only one field for each column, which will be updated every time you call functions like recordset-move or recordset-goto. If Recordset is of the type wxOPEN_TYPE_SNAPSHOT, all records returned by an ODBC function will be loaded at once.

16.6.5. ODBC SQL data types

See also *Database classes overview* (page 349)

These are the data types supported in ODBC SQL. Note that there are other, extended level conformance types, not currently supported in wxCLIPS.

CHAR(n)	A character string of fixed length *n*.
VARCHAR(n)	A varying length character string of maximum length *n*.
LONG VARCHAR(n)	A varying length character string: equivalent to VARCHAR for the purposes of ODBC.
DECIMAL(p, s)	An exact numeric of precision *p* and scale *s*.
NUMERIC(p, s)	Same as DECIMAL.

SMALLINT	A 2 byte integer.
INTEGER	A 4 byte integer.
REAL	A 4 byte floating point number.
FLOAT	An 8 byte floating point number.
DOUBLE PRECISION	Same as FLOAT.

These data types correspond to the following ODBC identifiers:

SQL_CHAR	A character string of fixed length.
SQL_VARCHAR	A varying length character string.
SQL_DECIMAL	An exact numeric.
SQL_NUMERIC	Same as SQL_DECIMAL.
SQL_SMALLINT	A 2 byte integer.
SQL_INTEGER	A 4 byte integer.
SQL_REAL	A 4 byte floating point number.
SQL_FLOAT	An 8 byte floating point number.
SQL_DOUBLE	Same as SQL_FLOAT.

16.6.6. A selection of SQL commands

See also *Database classes overview* (page 349)

The following is a very brief description of some common SQL commands, with examples.

16.6.6.1. Create

Creates a table.

Example:

```
CREATE TABLE Book
 (BookNumber     INTEGER     PRIMARY KEY
 , CategoryCode  CHAR(2)     DEFAULT 'RO' NOT NULL
 , Title         VARCHAR(100) UNIQUE
 , NumberOfPages SMALLINT
 , RetailPriceAmount NUMERIC(5,2)
 )
```

16.6.6.2. Insert

Inserts records into a table.

Example:

```
INSERT INTO Book
  (BookNumber, CategoryCode, Title)
  VALUES(5, 'HR', 'The Lark Ascending')
```

16.6.6.3. Select

The Select operation retrieves rows and columns from a table. The criteria for selection and the columns returned may be specified.

Examples:

```
SELECT * FROM Book
```

Selects all rows and columns from table Book.

```
SELECT Title, RetailPriceAmount FROM Book WHERE RetailPriceAmount >
20.0
```

Selects columns Title and RetailPriceAmount from table Book, returning only the rows that match the WHERE clause.

```
SELECT * FROM Book WHERE CatCode = 'LL' OR CatCode = 'RR'
```

Selects all columns from table Book, returning only the rows that match the WHERE clause.

```
SELECT * FROM Book WHERE CatCode IS NULL
```

Selects all columns from table Book, returning only rows where the CatCode column is NULL.

```
SELECT * FROM Book ORDER BY Title
```

Selects all columns from table Book, ordering by Title, in ascending order. To specify descending order, add DESC after the ORDER BY Title clause.

```
SELECT Title FROM Book WHERE RetailPriceAmount >= 20.0 AND
RetailPriceAmount <= 35.0
```

Selects records where RetailPriceAmount conforms to the WHERE expression.

16.6.6.4. Update

Updates records in a table.

Example:

```
UPDATE Incident SET X = 123 WHERE ASSET = 'BD34'
```

This example sets a field in column 'X' to the number 123, for the record where the column ASSET has the value 'BD34'.

16.7. Grid overview

Function group/class: *Grid* (page 272)

The grid class is a window designed for displaying data in tabular format. Possible uses include:

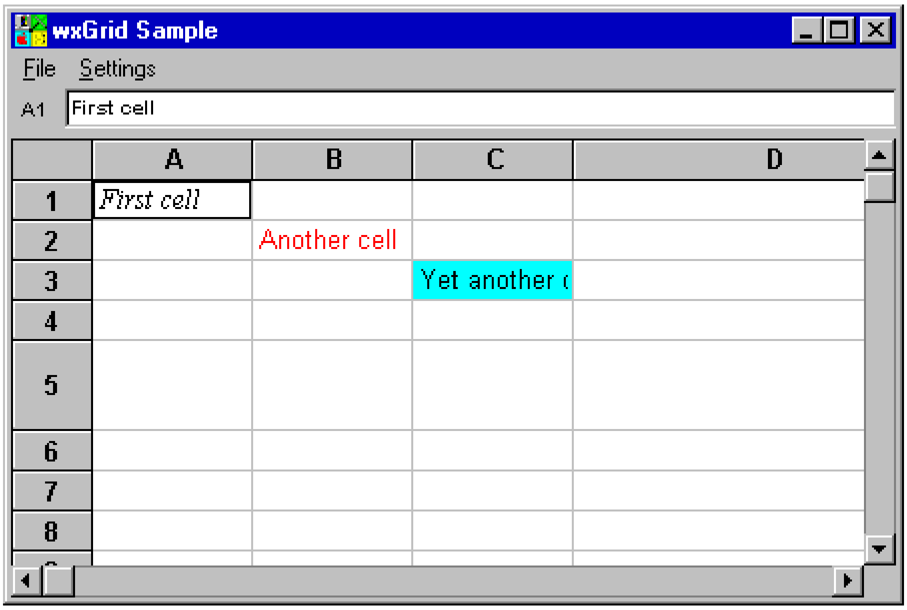
- Displaying database tables;
- building spreadsheet applications;
- displaying files and their attributes;

- use as a more sophisticated listbox where different fonts and colours are required.

This manual currently describes the version of Grid that operates under Windows, implementing using mostly generic wxWindows code. It is intended to provide a similar API for Motif using the public domain Xbae matrix widget, included in the wxGrid distribution. Work needs to be done to wrap the Xbae functionality in a similar API.

16.7.1. The appearance and behaviour of a grid

The following screenshot shows the initial appearance of the sample grid application.



A1 First cell

	A	B	C	D
1	*First cell*			
2		Another cell		
3			Yet another c	
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				

The Grid class is a panel that provides a text editing area, and a grid with scrollbars. The grid has horizontal and vertical label areas whose colours may be changed independently from the cell area. The text editing area, and the label areas, may be switched off if desired.

The user navigates the grid using the mouse to click on cells and scroll around the virtual grid area (no keyboard navigation is possible as yet). If the edit control is enabled, it always has the focus for the currently selected cell and the user can type into it. The text in the edit control will be reflected in the currently selected cell.

If the row and column label areas are enabled, the user can drag on the label divisions to resize a row or column.

The sample application allows the user to change various aspects of the grid using the Grid API. These include:

- Changing the background and foreground colour of labels and cells;
- toggling row and column label areas on and off independently;
- toggling the edit control on and off;
- toggling the light grey cell dividers on and off;
- changing cell alignment.

There are various other aspects that can be controlled via the API, including changing individual cell font and colour properties.

You need to call grid-create-grid before there are any cells in the grid.

All row and column positions start from zero, and dimensions are in pixels.

If you make changes to row or column dimensions, call grid-update-dimensions and then grid-adjust-scrollbars. If you make changes to the grid appearance (such as a change of cell background colour or font), call window-refresh for the changes to be shown.

16.7.2. Example

The following is an example of using the grid functionality.

```
;;; grid.clp
;;; grid test
;;; Load using -clips <file> on the command line or using the Batch
;;; or Load commands from the CLIPS development window; type
;;; (app-on-init) to start.

(defglobal ?*main-frame* = 0)
(defglobal ?*grid* = 0)

(deffunction on-close (?frame)
 (format t "Closing frame.%n")
 (bind ?*grid* 0)
 1)

(deffunction on-activate (?frame ?active)
  (if (> ?*grid* 0) then (grid-on-activate ?*grid* ?active))
)

(deffunction on-menu-command (?frame ?id)
 (switch ?id
  (case 200 then (message-box "CLIPS for wxWindows Demo
by Julian Smart (c) 1993" wxOK 1 0 "About wxWindows CLIPS Demo"))
  (case 3 then (if (on-close ?frame) then (window-delete ?frame)))
 )
)

;;; Test program to create a frame
(deffunction app-on-init ()
  (unwatch all)

  (bind ?*main-frame* (frame-create 0 "wxCLIPS Grid Test" -1 -1 400
300))

  (window-add-callback ?*main-frame* OnClose on-close)
  (window-add-callback ?*main-frame* OnMenuCommand on-menu-command)
  (window-add-callback ?*main-frame* OnActivate on-activate)

  ;;; Make a menu bar
  (bind ?file-menu (menu-create))
  (menu-append ?file-menu 3 "&Quit")
  (bind ?menu-bar (menu-bar-create))
  (menu-bar-append ?menu-bar ?file-menu "&File")

  (frame-set-menu-bar ?*main-frame* ?menu-bar)

  ;;; Make a grid
  (bind ?*grid* (grid-create ?*main-frame* 0 0 400 300))
  (grid-create-grid ?*grid* 10 8)
  (grid-set-column-width ?*grid* 3 200)
  (grid-set-row-height ?*grid* 4 45)
  (grid-set-cell-value ?*grid* "First cell" 0 0)
  (grid-set-cell-value ?*grid* "Another cell" 1 1)
  (grid-set-cell-value ?*grid* "Yet another cell" 2 2)
  (grid-set-cell-text-font ?*grid* (font-create 12 wxROMAN wxITALIC
wxNORMAL 0) 0 0)
  (bind ?red (colour-create RED))
  (grid-set-cell-text-colour ?*grid* ?red 1 1)
  (bind ?cyan (colour-create CYAN))
  (grid-set-cell-background-colour ?*grid* ?cyan 2 2)
  (grid-update-dimensions ?*grid*)

  (window-centre ?*main-frame* wxBOTH)

  (window-show ?*main-frame* 1)

  ?*main-frame*)
```

16.8. wxCOOL overview

16.8.1. What is wxCOOL?

Up until July 1995, wxCLIPS functionality was conceptually object-oriented, but solely implemented using CLIPS functions. Since the only way to couple CLIPS to C or C++ programs is by defining user functions, the functional route is a prerequisite. wxCOOL is a set of CLIPS classes built on top of the user functions, encapsulating most of the wxCLIPS functionality for which it is sensible to do so. At present, it is not quite complete. wxCOOL resides in the wxcool subdirectory of the wxCLIPS installation directory, and is loaded by batching the file wx.clp. Before using the classes, you need to call the function wxcool-init.

Because wxCOOL is implemented in terms of the wxCLIPS functions, it does add overhead to a CLIPS application in terms of loading time, execution speed, and (to a less significant degree) memory requirements. So you may still wish to code speed-critical parts of your application using the raw wxCLIPS functions, especially where a lot of GUI elements are to be created.

Saving your application as a binary file will certainly speed up loading time (and help protect your source code from prying eyes) but there may be a size limit on binary files under MS Windows (as yet undetermined). Another problem is that you cannot load a binary file and then load non-binary constructs: it's all-or-nothing.

16.8.2. How to use the wxCOOL class reference

In the *message handler definitions* (page 161), bold words are types, and are not part of CLIPS syntax. Parameter names are in italics. Types are as follows:

- **double** is a double-precision floating point number.
- **long** is a long integer.
- **string** is a double-quoted ASCII string.
- **word** is an unquoted string.
- **bool** is a CLIPS symbol taking values TRUE or FALSE.
- **multifield** is a CLIPS multi-field value list.
- **void** means that no value is returned.

Parameters can be **optional**, in which case defaults are assumed.

Some parameters can be combinations ('bit lists') of flags. wxCLIPS mimics the compact C++ syntax by parsing strings, for example:

```
  (make-instance (gensym*) of wxFrame (style "wxSDI | wxDEFAULT")
     ...)
```

Each identifier in such a parameter is translated to an integer value, and all are logical-or'ed together to produce an integer which is passed to the appropriate wxWindows C++ function.

Slots are listed before the message handlers.

Accessors (put-... and get-... functions) are not documented explicitly, but can be assumed where appropriate: see the documentation for each class's slots.

Create handlers for each class are documented, but are not explicitly called by the programmer: they are called by the *init* handler on instance creation. You can use call-next-handler from within a Create handler, to ensure all ancestors get a chance to initialise. However, you should not invoke call-next-handler in a 'delete' handler since CLIPS calls this for each class anyway.

16.8.3. Instance creation

Instance creation is done in the conventional CLIPS way, e.g.

```
 (make-instance test1 of MyFrame (title "Hello world!") (x 20) (y 20)
(width 200) (height 200))
```

Slot initializers take the place of function parameters, which makes for more legible code, albeit for instance creation only, and not normal message passing.

Each class has a message handler called 'create', which constructs the underlying object and adds callbacks for the instance. The initialization code cannot be put into the standard 'init' handler for each class, since this is called for every class that an instance inherits from, and would result in multiple wxCLIPS objects being created for one instance. Instead, there is one init handler for wxObject which sends a create message to the object, and create is redefined for each class.

Note that the integer identifier of the underlying wxCLIPS object can be retrieved with the get-id accessor.

16.8.4. Types

wxCLIPS uses integers for various purposes, including boolean values. This is inconvenient in

CLIPS applications, which normally use the symbolic values TRUE and FALSE. Accordingly, all wxCOOL boolean values are now symbolic (TRUE or FALSE). wxCOOL will not work correctly if you attempt to use integers instead of symbolic values.

16.8.5. wxCOOL event handling

wxCOOL function callbacks and events work differently from wxCLIPS callbacks and events. Instead of adding callbacks for events such as on-menu-command, you override the default event handler. All window objects derive from the class wxEvtHandler, which contains default handlers for all window callbacks. A window will normally process its own messages, so you would for example add an on-menu-command handler to your wxFrame-derived class. However, you can use the put-event-handler message to set the event handler to be a different instance of wxEvtHandler. So, you could avoid deriving from a window class altogether, and have one class which accepts the events from a variety of windows.

Panel items no longer require callback functions to be specified on creation. Instead, panel item events are sent as an on-command message to the panel item. The default wxItem on-command handler sends the message to its parent wxPanel, so you could derive a new class from wxPanel to receive on-command events, or set the item's event handler to direct it to a different instance.

The on-command handler takes wxItem instance and wxCommandEvent instance parameters. A convenient way of distinguishing incoming events is to give an item a name on creation, and test for that name in the on-command handler, using the get-name accessor.

16.8.6. Implementation details

From version 1.42, wxCLIPS has a few built-in functions to aid in maintaining a parallel set of classes corresponding to the underlying wxCLIPS classes (and ultimately, C++ classes). The *instance table* (page 283) functions help map between integer identifiers and CLIPS instance names. When an instance is constructed, the underlying wxCLIPS object is created and this id added to the instance table. On deletion, the entry is removed from the instance table. Callbacks are defined, such as gui-window-on-close, that are used for all instances of a class (and derived classes); they use instance-table-get-instance to retrieve the instance corresponding to the wxCLIPS object.

wxCLIPS sends OnDelete callbacks to the application when a wxCLIPS object is being deleted. This is exploited in wxCOOL to ensure that wxCOOL instances are cleaned up if wxCLIPS, and not the CLIPS application, deletes wxCLIPS objects. The twist is that we need to distinguish between an application-initiated deletion, for which we wish to call a function such as window-delete, and a wxCLIPS-initiated deletion, for which window-delete is effectively being called implicitly. To avoid deleting objects twice, wxCOOL sets a pending-delete slot in the object which is tested before deleting the underlying object.

In some cases, *all* deletions of a class's objects are initiated by wxCLIPS: for example, wxMenu instances will be deleted by the parent wxMenuBar, which is deleted implicitly when the wxFrame is deleted.

16.9. Resource overview

From version 1.49, wxCLIPS can load panels and dialog boxes from wxWindows resource files (extension `.wxr`). You may create dialog resources using the wxWindows Dialog Editor, which can be downloaded from:

`ftp.aiai.ed.ac.uk/pub/packages/wxwin/binary/dialoged10.zip`

Before creating a panel or dialog, load the resource file using *load-resource-file* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**). Then use *panel-create-from-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) or *dialog-box-create-from-resource* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**). Alternatively you can use the wxCOOL panel or dialog box instance creation syntax, supplying the *resource* slot value).

To find an arbitrary panel item, you may need to use *find-window-by-name* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**) or *find-window-by-label* (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

Glossary

API

Application Programmer's Interface - a set of calls and classes defining how a library can be used.

Bit list

A bit list in wxCLIPS is a way of specifying several window styles. It derives from C and C++ syntax, where by defining identifiers with carefully chosen binary numbers, it is possible to combine several values in one integer. In wxCLIPS, you use similar syntax to C, but enclose the list in quotes:

```
"wxCAPTION | wxMINIMIZE_BOX | wxMINIMIZE_BOX | wxTHICK_FRAME"
```

Callback

Callbacks are application-defined functions which receive events from the GUI. You normally add a callback for a particular window (such as a canvas) and event (such as OnPaint) using window-add-callback, or pass the callback in a panel item creation function, such as button-create.

Canvas

A canvas is a subwindow on which graphics (but not panel items) can be drawn. It may be scrollable. A canvas has a*device context overview* (page 258) associated with it.

DDE

Dynamic Data Exchange - Microsoft's interprocess communication protocol. wxCLIPS provides a subset of DDE under both Windows and UNIX.

Device context

A device context is an abstraction away from devices such as windows, printers and files. Code that draws to a device context is generic since that device context could be associated with a number of different real device. A canvas has a device context, although duplicate graphics calls are provided for the canvas, so the beginner doesn't have to think in terms of device contexts when starting out. See *device context overview* (page 258).

Dialog box

In wxCLIPS a dialog box is a convenient way of popping up a window with panel items, without having to explicitly create a frame and a panel. A dialog box may be modal or modeless. A modal dialog does not return control back to the calling program until the user has dismissed it, and all other windows in the application are disabled until the dialog is dismissed. A modeless dialog is just like a normal window in that the user can access other windows while the dialog is displayed.

Frame

A visible window usually consists of a frame which contains zero or more subwindows, such as text subwindow, canvas, and panel.

GUI

Graphical User Interface, such as MS Windows or Motif.

Menu bar

A menu bar is a series of labelled menus, usually placed near the top of a window.

Metafile

MS Windows-specific object which may contain a restricted set of GDI primitives. It is device independent, since it may be scaled without losing precision, unlike a bitmap. A metafile may exist in a file or in memory. wxCLIPS implements enough metafile functionality to use it to pass graphics to other applications via the clipboard or files.

Open Look

A specification for a GUI 'look and feel', initiated by Sun Microsystems. XView is one toolkit for writing Open Look applications under X, and wxCLIPS sits on top of XView (among other toolkits).

Panel

A panel is a subwindow on which a limited range of panel items (widgets or controls for user input) can be placed. wxCLIPS allows panel items to be placed explicitly, or laid out from left to right, top to bottom, which is a more platform independent method since spacing is calculated automatically at run time. Panel items cannot be placed on a canvas, which is specifically for drawing graphics. However, you can draw on a panel.

Resource

Resource takes several meanings in wxCLIPS. The functions get-resource, write-resource deal with MS Windows `.ini` and X `.Xdefaults` resource entries. The wxWindows/wxCLIPS 'resource system', on the other hand, is a facility for loading dialog specifications from `.wxr` files (which may be created by hand or using the wxWindows Dialog Editor).

Status line

A status line is often found at the base of a window, to keep the user informed (for instance, giving a line of description to menu items, as in the**hello** demo).

XView

An X toolkit supplied by Sun Microsystems for implementing the Open Look 'look and feel'. Freely available, but virtually obsolete.